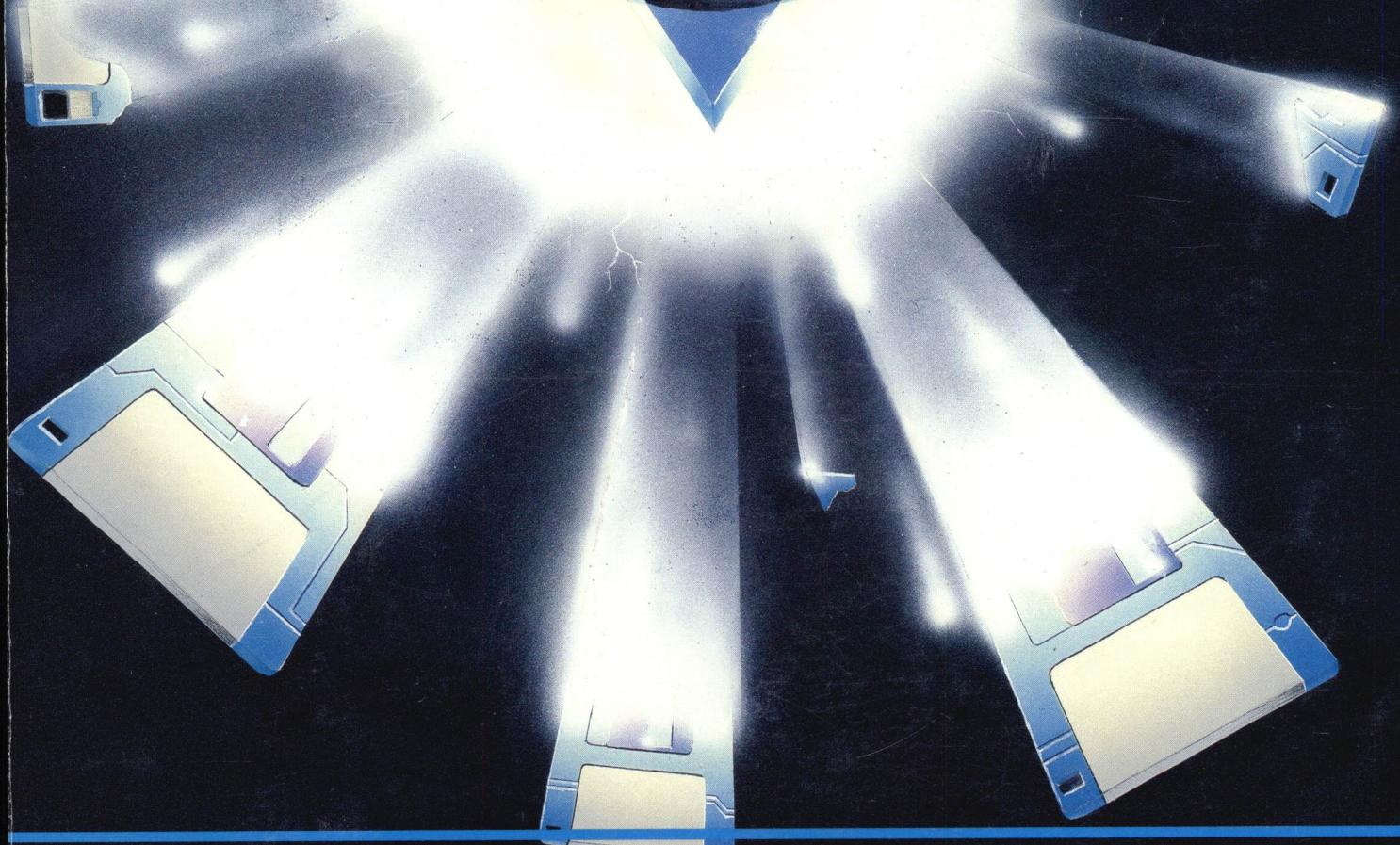


BLITZ

BASIC



ACID
SOFTWARE

REFERENCE MANUAL

CONTENTS

Chapters

1. Program Flow
2. Variable Handling
3. Procedures
4. Input Output
5. Numeric Functions
6. String Functions
7. File Access
8. Compiler Directives
9. Assembler
10. Memory Access
11. Program Startup
12. Object Handling
13. Bitmaps
14. Shapes
15. ILBM
16. 2D Drawing
17. Palettes, Fades and Cycling
18. Sound
19. Slices
20. Sprites
21. Blitting
22. Collisions
23. Blitz I/O
24. Screens
25. Windows
26. Gadgets
27. Menus
28. Brexx



Appendices

1. Blitz 2 Object
2. Compile Time Errors
3. Amiga Library Routines
4. Hardware Registers
5. 68000 Assembly Reference
6. Rawkey Table

Index

Blitz BASIC 2 was developed by Mark Sibly

COPYRIGHT

This manual is Copyright Acid Software, a member of Armstrong Communications.

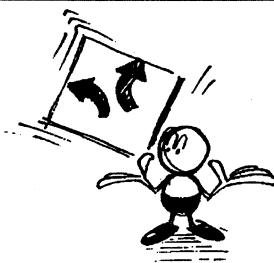
This document may not, in whole or in part, be copied, photocopied, reproduced, translated, or reduced to any electronic medium without prior consent, in writing, from Acid Software.

The distribution and sale of this product are intended for the use of the original purchaser only. Lawful users of this program are hereby licensed only to read the program and its libraries from its medium into memory of the computer solely for the purpose of executing the program.

Duplicating, copying, selling or otherwise distributing this product is a violation of the law.

Printed in Auckland, New Zealand by 

1. Program Flow



Program flow refers to the order in which a program's instructions are executed. When a program is run, its commands are executed in a top-down manner. This means instructions are executed one after another, from the top of your program to the bottom. This section deals with commands which interrupt this normal process, and cause commands to be executed from a different point in the program.

Amiga interrupt control commands are also covered at the end of this section.

Statement: Goto

Syntax: **Goto** *Program Label*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Goto causes program flow to be transferred to the specified *program label*. This allows sections of a program to be 'skipped' or 'repeated'.

Example:

```

;
; goto program example
;

Goto there
NPrint "What happened to me?"

there:
NPrint "Program flow has reached 'there'"
MouseWait

```

See Also:

Gosub

Statement: Gosub

Syntax: **Gosub** *Program Label*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Gosub operates in two steps. First, the location of the instruction following the **Gosub** is remembered in a special storage area (known as the 'stack'). Secondly, program flow is transferred to the specified

Program Label.

The section of program that program flow is transferred to is known as a 'subroutine' and is usually terminated by a **Return** command. The **Return** command has the effect of returning program flow to the location remembered by the previous **Gosub** command.

This allows a section of a program to be used by many other parts of the same program.

Example:

```
;  
; gosub program example  
;  
  
Gosub two  
NPrint "Three!"  
MouseWait  
End  
  
two:  
Gosub one  
NPrint "Two!"  
Return  
  
one:  
NPrint "One!"  
Return
```

See Also:

Return

Statement: **Return**

Syntax: **Return**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Return is used to return program flow to the instruction following the previously executed **Gosub** command. This allows the creation of 'subroutines' which may be called from various points in a program.

See Also:

Gosub

Statement: **On...Goto|Gosub**

Syntax: **On Expression Goto|Gosub Program Label[,Program Label...]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

On allows a program to branch, via either a **Goto** or a **Gosub**, to one of a number of *Program Labels* depending upon the result of the specified *Expression*.

If the specified *Expression* results in a 1, then the first *Program Label* will be branched to. A result of 2 will cause the second *Program Label* to be branched to and so on.

If the result of *Expression* is less than one, or not enough *Program Labels* are supplied, program flow will continue from the command following the **On**.

Example:

```

;
; on...gosub prgram example
;

For k=1 To 3
  On k Gosub one,two,three
  Next

  MouseWait
  End

  one:
  NPrint "One!"
  Return

  two:
  NPrint "Two!"
  Return

  three:NPrint "Three!"
  Return

  NPrint "Click mouse button to return to the editor..."
  MouseWait

```

Statement: MouseWait

Syntax: **MouseWait**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

MouseWait simply halts program flow until the left mouse button is pushed. If the left mouse button is already held down when a **MouseWait** is executed, program flow will simply continue through.

This is often useful in Blitz 2 to prevent a program from terminating too quickly and leaving you back in the editor.

MouseWait should normally be used only for program testing purposes, as **MouseWait** severely slows down multi-tasking.

Example:

```
;  
; mousewait program example  
;  
  
a=10  
NPrint "Click mouse button, then type 'NPrint a'"  
MouseWait  
Stop
```

Statement: End

Syntax: End

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

End will halt program flow completely. In the case of programs run from the Blitz 2 editor, you will be returned to the editor. In the case of executable files, you will be returned to the Workbench or CLI.

End is often also useful to prevent program flow from running into a subroutine.

Example:

```
;  
; end program example  
;  
  
Gosub there  
MouseWait  
End  
there:  
NPrint "Hello!"  
Return
```

See Also:

Stop

Statement: Stop

Syntax: Stop

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Stop** command will cause program flow to stop, and user control to be transferred to Blitz 2 direct mode.

The **Stop** command is really only useful in debugging situations, as it allows the programmer a chance

to have a look at program variables via Blitz 2's direct mode.

Example:

```
;  
; stop program example  
;  
  
a=10  
NPrint "Click mouse button, then type 'NPrint a'"  
MouseWait  
Stop
```

See Also:

End, Cont

Statement: **Cont**

Syntax: **Cont** [*N*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Cont** command is only available in Blitz 2 direct mode. **Cont** will cause program flow to continue from the instruction following the instruction which caused a jump to direct mode. This instruction may have been either a **Stop** or a program error of some kind.

The optional *N* parameter can be used to tell Blitz 2 programs to ignore a number of **Stop** commands after a **Cont**. This is useful in debugging as it allows you to insert a **Stop** inside a program loop, but not have to **Cont** every pass of the loop.

See Also:

Stop

Statement: **If**

Syntax: **If** *Expression* [**Then...**]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

If allows you to execute a section of program depending on the value of program variables. *Expression* usually includes some form of comparison operator.

If an **If** is followed by a **Then**, and the expression proves to be true, then the instructions following the **Then** will be executed. If the expression proves to be false, then the instructions following the **Then** are ignored, and program flow continues from the line following the **If**.

If an **If** is NOT followed by a **Then**, and the expression proves to be true, then program flow will continue from the instruction following the **If**. If the expression proves to be false, then program flow

will continue from the instruction following the next matching **EndIf** or **Else** command. Blocks of program instructions inside an **If** and an **EndIf** are known as 'If blocks'.

Example:

```
;  
; if...then program example  
;  
For k=1 To 10  
  If k=5 Then NPrint "k is 5!"  
  If k<5  
    NPrint "k is less than 5!"  
  Else  
    NPrint "k is not less than 5!"  
  EndIf  
  Next  
  MouseWait
```

See Also:

Else, **EndIf**

Statement: EndIf

Syntax: **EndIf**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

EndIf is used to terminate an 'If block'. An If block is begun by use of the **If** statement. Please refer to **If** for more information on If blocks.

See Also:

If, **Else**

Statement: Else

Syntax: **Else** [*Statement...*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Else may be used after an **If** to cause program instructions to be executed if the expression specified in the **If** proved to be false.

Example:

```

;
; if...else...endif program example
;

NPrint "Type a number from 1 to 10"
a=Edit(3)

If a<5
  NPrint "Your number is less than 5"
Else
  NPrint "Your number is greater than or equal to 5"
EndIf

MouseWait

```

See Also:

If, **EndIf**

Statement: While

Syntax: **While** *Expression*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **While** command is used to execute a series of commands repeatedly while the specified *Expression* proves to be true. The commands to be executed include all the commands following the **While** until the next matching **Wend**.

Example:

```

;
; while...wend program example
;

While a<10
  NPrint a
  a+1
Wend

MouseWait

```

See Also:

Wend, **Repeat**

Statement: Wend

Syntax: **Wend**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Wend is used in conjunction with **While** to determine a section of program to be executed repeatedly based upon the truth of an expression.

See Also:

While

Statement: Select

Syntax: *Select Expression*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Select examines and 'remembers' the result of the specified *Expression*. Later in the program, **Case** may be used to execute different sections of program code depending on this result. Here is an example of a typical **Select...Case...End Select** sequence:

```
Select Expression
Case 1
;execute this if expression evaluated to 1
Case 2
;execute this if expression evaluated to 2
.may have many more 'Case's...
```

```
Default
;execute this if expression did not match any of the cases.
End Select
```

Example:

```
; ; select...case program example
;
Print "Enter a number from 1 to 3:"
n=Edit(80)

Select n
Case 1
    NPrint "One!"
Case 2
    NPrint "Two!"
Case 3
    NPrint "Three!"
Default
    NPrint "That number was not 1, 2 or 3!"
End Select

MouseWait
```

See Also:

Case, Default, End Select

Statement: Case

Syntax: **Case Expression**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

A **Case** is used following a **Select** to execute a section of program code when, and only when, the *Expression* specified in the **Case** statement is equivalent to the *Expression* specified in the **Select** statement.

If a **Case** statement is satisfied, program flow will continue until the next **Case, Default** or **End Select** statement is encountered, at which point program flow will branch to the next matching **End Select**.

See Also:

Select, Default, End Select

Statement: Default

Syntax: **Default**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

A **Default** statement may appear following a series of **Case** statements to cause a section of program code to be executed if NONE of the **Case** statements were satisfied.

See Also:

Select, Case, End Select

Statement: End Select

Syntax: **End Select**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

End Select terminates a **Select...Case...End Select** sequence. If program flow had been diverted through the use of a **Case** or **Default** statement, it will continue from the terminating **End Select**.

See Also:

Select, Case, Default

Statement: For

Syntax: **For Var=Expression1 To Expression2 [Step Expression3]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **For** statement initializes a **For...Next** loop. All For/Next loops must begin with a **For** statement, and must have a terminating **Next** statement further down the program. For/Next loops cause a particular section of code to be repeated a certain number of times. The **For** statement does most of the work in a For/Next loop. When **For** is executed, the variable specified by **Var** (known as the index variable) will be set to the value *Expression1*. After this, the actual loop commences.

At the beginning of the loop, a check is made to see if the value of **Var** has exceeded *Expression2*. If so, program flow will branch to the command following the For/Next loop's **Next**, ending the loop. If not, program flow continues on until the loop's **Next** is reached. At this point, the value specified in *Expression3* (the 'step' value) is added to **Var**, and program flow is sent back to the top of the loop, where **Var** is again checked against *Expression2*. If *Expression3* is omitted, a default step value of 1 will be used.

An interesting feature of For/Next loops is the ability to use the loop's index variable within the loop. In order for a For/Next loop to count 'down' from one value to a lower value, a negative step number must be supplied.

Example:

```
; nested for...next loops program example
;

For a=1 To 3      ;start up a for next loop
  For b=3 To 1 Step -1 ;and another, 'inner' loop
    NPrint "a=",a," b=",b ;show what's happening to the index variables.
    Next                ;next for 'b' For/Next loop...
  Next                ;next for 'a' For/Next loop...

MouseWait
```

See Also:

Next, Step

Statement: Next

Syntax: **Next [Var[,Var...]]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Next terminates a For/Next loop. Please refer to the **For** command for more information on For/Next loops.

See Also:

For, Step

Statement: Repeat

Syntax: Repeat

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Repeat is used to begin a **Repeat...Until** loop. Each **Repeat** statement in a program must have a corresponding **Until** further down the program.

The purpose of Repeat/Until loops is to cause a section of code to be executed AT LEAST ONCE before a test is made to see if the code should be executed again.

Example:

```

;
; repeat...until program example
;

Repeat

Print "Type a number (0 to quit):"
n=Edit(80)

If n/2=Int(n/2)
  NPrint n, " is an even number"
Else
  NPrint n, " is an odd number"
EndIf

Until n=0

```

See Also:

Until, Forever

Statement: Until

Syntax: Until *Expression*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Until is used to terminate a Repeat/Until loop. If *Expression* proves to be true (non 0), then program flow will continue from the command following **Until**. If *Expression* proves to be false (0), then program flow will go back to the corresponding **Repeat**, found further up the program.

See Also:

Repeat, Forever

Statement: Forever

Syntax: **Forever**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Forever may be used instead of **Until** to cause a Repeat/Until loop to NEVER exit.Executing **Forever** is identical to executing '**Until 0**'.

See Also:

Repeat, Until

Statement: Pop

Syntax: **Pop Gosub|Forl|Selectl|If|Whilel|Repeat**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Sometimes, it may be necessary to exit from a particular type of program loop in order to transfer program flow to a different part of the program. However, to achieve this Blitz 2 must be told that the relevant loop should be 'forgotten'. This is the purpose of **Pop**.Actually, **Pop** is only necessary to prematurely terminate **Gosubs**, **Fors** and **Selects**. **If**, **While** and **Repeat** have been included for completeness.

Example:

```
; ; guessing game program example (pop example in here somewhere)
;
```

Repeat

```
NPrint "Think of a number between 1 and 1000...
NPrint "I Shall try to guess it in ten goes!"
```

```
I=0:h=1000
```

```
For k=1 To 10
n=Int((h-l)/2)+1
```

Repeat

```
Print "Is your number ",n,"? (y)es, (h)igher, (l)ower ?"
```

```
a$=LCase$(Edit$(1))
Until a$="y" OR a$="h" OR a$="l"
```

```
Select a$
Case "y"
  NPrint "Clever, aren't I ?"
  NPrint "I got it in ",k," guesses!"
  Pop Select:Pop For
  Goto right
Case "l"
  h=n
Case "h"
  l=n
End Select
```

Next

```
NPrint "Huh??? You must have CHEATED!"
```

right:

```
Print "Another Game ? (y)es, (n)o ?"
a$=LCase$(Edit$(1))
```

```
Until a$="n"
```

Statement: SetInt

Syntax: SetInt *Type*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SetInt is used to declare a section of program code as 'interrupt' code. Before going further into the details of **SetInt**, let's have a quick look at what interrupts are.

Often, when a computer program is running, an event of some importance takes place which must be processed immediately. This is done through interrupts. When an interrupt occurs, whatever program may be currently running is completely halted by the 68000. Then, a program known as an 'interrupt handler' is started. Once the interrupt handler has done its work, the program which was originally interrupted is restarted, without any knowledge of having been disturbed.

So what can cause an interrupt? On the Amiga, there are 14 different types of possible interrupts, each assigned its own special number. These interrupts are as follows:

Interrupt	Cause of Interrupt
0	Serial transmit buffer empty
1	Disk Block read/written
2	Software interrupt
3	Cia ports interrupt
4	Co-processor ('copper') interrupt
5	Vertical Blank
6	Blitter finished
7	Audio channel 0 pointer/length fetched
8	Audio channel 1 pointer/length fetched
9	Audio channel 2 pointer/length fetched
10	Audio channel 3 pointer/length fetched
11	Serial receive buffer full
12	Floppy disk sync
13	External interrupt

The most useful of these interrupts is the vertical blank interrupt. This interrupt occurs every time an entire video frame has been fully displayed (about every sixtieth of a second), and is very useful for animation purposes. If a section of program code has been designated as a vertical blank interrupt handler, then that section of code will be executed every sixtieth of a second.

Interrupt handlers must perform their task as quickly as possible, especially in the case of vertical blank handlers which must NEVER take longer than one sixtieth of a second to execute.

Interrupt handlers in Blitz 2 must NEVER access string variables or literal strings. In Blitz mode, this is the only restriction on interrupt handlers. In Amiga mode, no blitter, Intuition or file i/o commands may be executed by interrupt handlers.

To set up a section of code to be used as an interrupt handler, you use the **SetInt** command followed by the actual interrupt handler code. An **End SetInt** should follow the interrupt code. The **Type** parameter specifies the type of interrupt, from the above table, the interrupt handler should be attached to. For example, **SetInt 5** should be used for vertical blank interrupt code.

More than one interrupt handler may be attached to a particular type of interrupt.

Example:

```

; vertical blank interrupt routine program example
;

SetInt 5           ;vertical blank handler follows.....
    a+1             ;add one to 'a'
    Poke.w $dff180,a ;this little poke will change background colour
End SetInt        ;end of interrupt handler

MouseWait         ;wait for mouseclick - handler still going!

```

See Also:

End SetInt, Clrlnt

Statement: End SetInt

Syntax: End SetInt

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

End SetInt must appear after a **SetInt** to signify the end of a section of interrupt handler code. Please refer to **SetInt** for more information of interrupt handlers.

See Also:

SetInt, ClrInt

Statement: ClrInt

Syntax: ClrInt *Type*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ClrInt may be used to remove any interrupt handlers currently attached to the specified interrupt *Type*. The **SetInt** command is used to attach interrupt handlers to particular interrupts.

Example:

```
;
; end setint program example
;

SetInt 5          ;interrupt handler follows...
    a+1           ;add one to 'a'
    Poke.w $dff180,a ;set background colour
End SetInt        ;end of handler

NPrint "Hit return..." ;handler going till return is hit...
b=Edit(1)         ;do an edit function
ClrInt 5           ;turn off all type 5 interrupt handlers
NPrint "Click Mouse button..."
MouseWait
```

See Also:

SetInt, End SetInt

Statement: SetErr

Syntax: SetErr

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **SetErr** command allows you to set up custom error handlers. Program code which appears after the **SetErr** command will be executed when any Blitz 2 runtime errors are caused. Custom error code should be ended by an **End SetErr**.

Example:

```
;  
; error handler example program  
;  
SetErr           ;install error handler  
NPrint "RUNTIME ERROR!"    ;this is our handler...  
NPrint "Click Mouse Button."  
MouseWait  
ErrFail  
End SetErr        ;end of error handler  
  
Dim a(10)          ;dim an array  
For k=1 To 11      ;going to cause an error!  
  a(k)=k  
NPrint a(k)  
Next
```

See Also:

ClrErr, ErrFail

Statement: End SetErr

Syntax: End SetErr

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

End SetErr must appear following custom error handlers installed using **SetErr**. Please refer to **SetErr** for more information on custom error handlers.

See Also:

SetErr, ClrErr, ErrFail

Statement: ClrErr

Syntax: ClrErr

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ClrErr may be used to remove a custom error handler set up using **SetErr**.

See Also:

SetErr, ErrFail, ClrErr

Statement: ErrFail

Syntax: ErrFail

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ErrFail may be used within custom error handlers to cause a 'normal' error. The error which caused the custom error handler to be executed will be reported and transfer will be passed to direct mode.

See Also:

SetErr, ClrErr

Statement: VWait

Syntax: VWait [*Frames*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

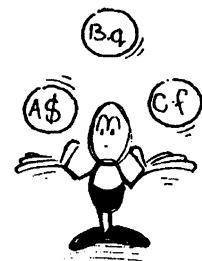
Description:

VWait will cause program flow to halt until the next vertical blank occurs. The optional *Frames* parameter may be used to wait for a particular number of vertical blanks.

VWait is especially useful in animation for synchronizing display changes with the rate at which the display is physically redrawn by the monitor.

BLIZZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

2. Variable Handling



This section covers all commands related to Blitz 2 variable handling. This includes the handling of standard types as well as Blitz 2's NewTypes, arrays, lists, and data statements. NewTypes are Blitz's answer to C structures while Lists refer to Blitz's linked list capabilities including a whole command set supporting all standard operations on linked lists.

Statement: Let

Syntax: *Let Var=I Operator Expression*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Let is an optional command used to assign a value to a variable. **Let** must always be followed by a variable name and an expression. Normally, an equals sign ('=') is placed between the variable name and the expression. If the equals sign is omitted, then an operator (eg: '+', '') must appear between the variable name and the expression. In this case, the specified variable will be altered by the specified operator and expression. Here are some examples of **Let**:

Example:

```
; let program example
;
Let a=10      ;assign 10 to 'a'
Let a=b*5    ;assign 'b times 5' to 'a'
Let k+1       ;add 1 to 'k'
Let z*5       ;multiply 'z' by 5.
```

Statement: Data

Syntax: *Data [.Type] Item[,Item...]*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Data** statement allows you to include pre-defined values in your programs. These 'data items' may be transferred into variables using the **Read** statement.

When data is read into variables, the *Type* of the data being read MUST match the type of the variable it is being read into.

Example:

```
; read data program example
;

Read a$,b,c,w      ;read next 3 pieces of data.
NPrint a$           ;print them out...
NPrint b
NPrint c
MouseWait
End

Data$ "Some data to be read" ;data to be read - string...
Data 10              ;quick...
Data.w -5             ;and word.
```

See Also:

Read, Restore

Statement: Read

Syntax: **Read** *Var[Var...]*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Read is used to transfer items in **Data** statements into variables. Data is transferred sequentially into variables through what is known as a 'data pointer'. Each time a piece of data is read, the data pointer is incremented to point at the next piece of data. The data pointer may be set to point to a particular piece of data using the **Restore** command.

See Also:

Data, Restore

Statement: Restore

Syntax: **Restore** [*Program Label*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Restore allows you to set Blitz 2's internal 'data pointer' to a particular piece of data. after executing a **Restore**, The first item of data following the specified *Program Label* will become the data to be read when the next **Read** command is executed.

Restore with no parameters will reset the data pointer to the very first piece of data in the program.

See Also:

Data, **Read**

Statement: Exchange

Syntax: Exchange *Var,Var*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Exchange will 'swap' the values contained in the 2 specified variables. **Exchange** may only be used with 2 variables of the same type.

Example:

```

;
; exchange program example
;

a=10      ;put 10 into 'a'
b=20      ;put 20 into 'b'
NPrint a   ;print a & b
NPrint b
Exchange a,b ;exchange variables...
NPrint a   ;print a & b again...
NPrint b
MouseWait

```

Statement: MaxLen

Syntax: MaxLen *StringVar=Expression*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

MaxLen sets aside a block of memory for a string variable to grow into. This is normally only necessary in the case of special Blitz 2 commands which require this space to be present before execution. Currently, only 2 Blitz 2 commands require the use of **MaxLen** - **FileRequest\$** and **Fields**.

Example

```

;
; filerequest program example
;

WbToScreen 0      ;pick up workbench as currently used screen
WBenchToFront_    ;bring workbench to front of view
MaxLen pa$=160    ;these are necessary for FileRequest$...
MaxLen fi$=64     ;to operate properly!

```

a\$=FileRequest\$("Select a File",pa\$,fi\$) ;bring up a file requester

WBenchToBack_ ;workbench back to rear of view.

See Also:

FileRequest\$, **Fields**

Statement: DEFTYPE

Syntax: **DEFTYPE .Typename [Var[,Var...]]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

DEFTYPE may be used in 2 ways:

* **DEFTYPE** may be used to declare a list of variables as being of a particular type. In this case, **Var** parameters must be supplied.

* **DEFTYPE** may be used to select a default variable type for future 'unknown' variables. Unknown variables are variables created with no **Typename** specifier. In this case, no **Var** parameters are supplied.

Please refer to the Programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers guide for more information on variable types and the use of **DEFTYPE**.

Example:

```
;  
; deftype program example  
;  
DEFTYPE.l a,b,c ;these variables are all 'longs'  
d=10 ;'d' is a quick (the initial default type)  
DEFTYPE.w ;set default type to 'word'  
e=10 ;'e' is a word
```

See Also:

NEWTYPE

Statement: NEWTYPE

Syntax: **NEWTYPE .Typename**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

NEWTYPE is used to create a custom variable type. **NEWTYPE** must be followed by a list of entry

names separated by colons (':') and/or newlines. **NEWTYPEs** are terminated using **End NEWTYPE**. Please refer to the Programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers Guide for more information on setting up and using custom variable types.

Example:

```

;
; newtype program example
;

NEWTYPE.test      ;start of custom variable type.
  a.l                ;contents of type...
  b.w                ;...
  c.q                ;...
End NEWTYPE        ;end of custom variable type.

a.test\ a=10,20,30   ;assign some values.

NPrint a\ a,a\ b,a\ c    ;output values

MouseWait
```

See Also:

DEFTYPE, USEPATH

Function: **SizeOf**

Syntax: **SizeOf .Typename[,Entrypath]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SizeOf allows you to determine the amount of memory, in bytes, a particular variable type takes up. **SizeOf** may also be followed by an optional *Entrypath*, in which case the offset from the start of the type to the specified entry is returned.

Example:

```

;
; sizeof program example
;

NEWTYPE.test      ;create a custom variable type...
  a.l
  b.w
  c.q
End NEWTYPE        ;end of custom variable type.

NPrint SizeOf.b    ;print size of a byte!
NPrint SizeOf.test   ;print size of our custom type
NPrint SizeOf.test\b  ;print offset to 'b' entry of our type.
```

MouseWait

See Also:

NEWTYPE

Statement: Dim

Syntax: Dim *Arrayname* [*List*] (*Dimension1*[,*Dimension2*...])

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Dim is used to initialize a BASIC array. Blitz 2 supports 2 array types - simple arrays, and list arrays. The optional *List* parameter, if present, denotes a list array. Simple arrays are identical to standard BASIC arrays, and may be of any number dimensions. List arrays may be of only 1 dimension.

Lists are covered fully in the Blitz 2 programmers guide, under the programming section.

Example:

```
;  
; array example  
;  
  
Dim a(3,3) ;initialize 'a' array  
  
For k=1 To 3 ;outer loop...  
  For j=1 To 3 ;inner loop...  
    a(k,j)=c ;assign array element  
    c+c+1 ;increment 'c'  
  Next ;end of inner loop  
  Next ;end of outer loop  
  
For k=1 To 3 ;outer loop...  
  For j=1 To 3 ;inner loop...  
    NPrint "a(",k,")",j,")=",a(k,j) ;print out array elements  
  Next ;end of inner loop  
  Next
```

MouseWait

Statement: ResetList

Syntax: ResetList *Arrayname()*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ResetList is used in conjunction with a list array to prepare the list array for **NextItem** processing.

After executing a **ResetList**, the next **NextItem** executed will set the list array's 'current element' pointer to the list array's very first item.

Example:

```

;
; list program example
;

Dim List a(10)           ;initialize a list array...
;  

While AddFirst(a())        ;fill it up with stuff
  a()=c
  c+1
Wend

NPrint "Contents of a()..."

ResetList a()            ;back to first item in list

While NextItem(a())        ;process list
  NPrint a()              ;output value of element
  Wend

MouseWait
```

See Also:

NextItem

Statement: **ClearList**

Syntax: **ClearList Arrayname()**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ClearList is used in conjunction with list arrays to completely 'empty' out the specified list array. List arrays are automatically emptied when they are **Dimmed**.

See Also:

Dim, ResetList

Function: **AddFirst**

Syntax: **AddFirst (Arrayname())**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **AddFirst** function allows you to insert an array list item at the beginning of an array list. **AddFirst** returns a true/false value reflecting whether or not there was enough room in the array list to add an element. If an array element was available, **AddFirst** returns a true value (-1), and sets the list array's 'current item' pointer to the item added. If no array element was available, **AddFirst** returns false (0).

Example:

```
; addfirst program example
;
Dim List a(100)           ;initialize list array
;
While AddFirst(a())        ;while an item is available...
    a0=c                  ;set it to something...
    c+1                   ;increment counter
Wend
NPrint c, " items successfully added." ;output how many items added
MouseWait
```

See Also:

AddLast, **AddItem**, **KillItem**

Function: **AddLast**

Syntax: **AddLast (Arrayname())**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **AddLast** function allows you to insert an array list item at the end of an array list. **AddLast** returns a true/false value reflecting whether or not there was enough room in the array list to add an element. If an array element was available, **AddLast** returns a true value (-1), and sets the list array's 'current item' pointer to the item added. If no array element was available, **AddLast** returns false (0).

See Also:

AddFirst, **AddItem**, **KillItem**

Function: **AddItem**

Syntax: **AddItem (Arrayname())**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **AddItem** function allows you to insert an array list item *after* the list array's 'current' item. **AddItem** returns a true/false value reflecting whether or not there was enough room in the array list to add an element. If an array element was available, **AddItem** returns a true value (-1), and sets the list array's

'current item' pointer to the item added. If no array element was available, **AddItem** returns false (0).

Example:

```

;
; list handling program example
;

Dim List a(10)

If AddFirst(a()) Then a()=1

If AddItem(a()) Then a()=2

NPrint "List Array (first to last) is..."

ResetList a()

While NextItem(a())
  NPrint a()
Wend

MouseWait
```

See Also:

AddFirst, **AddLast**, **KillItem**

Statement: KillItem

Syntax: **KillItem** *ArrayName()*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

KillItem is used to delete the specified list array's current item. After executing **KillItem**, the list array's 'current item' pointer will be set to the item *before* the item deleted.

Example:

```

;
; process list with killitem program example
;

Dim List a(10)          ;initialize list array

While AddItem(a())        ;fill list...
  a()=c                  ;with sequential values...
  c+1
Wend

ResetList a()           ;reset list...
```

```
While NextItem(a0)      ;process list...
  If a0/2<>Int(a0/2)    ;is item odd ?
    KillItem a0          ;yes, kill it!
  EndIf
Wend

NPrint "Final List (Odd elements deleted) is..."

ResetList a0            ;reset list

While NextItem(a0)      ;output all elements...
  NPrint a0
Wend

MouseWait
```

See Also:

AddFirst, AddLast, AddItem

Function: **PrevItem**

Syntax: **PrevItem (Arrayname())**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

PrevItem will set the specified list array's 'current item' pointer to the item *before* the list array's old current item. This allows for 'backwards' processing of a list array. **PrevItem** returns a true/false value reflecting whether or not there actually was a previous item. If a previous item was available, **PrevItem** will return true (-1). Otherwise, **PrevItem** will return false (0).

Example:

```
; print list backwards program example
;

Dim List a(10)           ;initialize list array

While AddLast(a0)         ;fill list...
  a0=c                   ;with 0,1,2...
  c+1
Wend

NPrint "List contents (backwards) are..."

If LastItem(a0)           ;go to last item in list
  Repeat                 ;repeat...
    NPrint a0
  Until NOT PrevItem(a0)   ;until no more previous items
EndIf
```

MouseWait

See Also:

NextItem

Function: NextItem

Syntax: **NextItem (Arrayname())**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

NextItem will set the specified list array's 'current item' pointer to the item *after* the list array's old current item. This allows for 'forwards' processing of a list array. **NextItem** returns a true/false value reflecting whether or not there actually was a next item available or not. If an item was available, **NextItem** will return true (-1). Otherwise, **NextItem** will return false (0).

Example:

```

;
; print list forwards program example
;

Dim List a(10)      ;initialize list array

While AddLast(a())
    a()=c           ;fill list
    c+=1
Wend

NPrint "List contents (forwards) are..."

ResetList a()        ;reset list

While NextItem(a())   ;output items in list...
    NPrint a()
Wend

MouseWait

```

See Also:

PrevItem

Function: FirstItem

Syntax: **FirstItem (Arrayname())**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Executing **FirstItem** will set the specified list array's 'current item' pointer to the very first item in the list array. If there are no items in the list array, **FirstItem** will return false (0) otherwise, **FirstItem** will return true (-1).

Example:

```
; print lastitem in list
;
Dim List a(10)      ;initialize list array
While AddFirst(a())  ;fill list array...
  a()=c
  c+1
Wend
If FirstItem(a())    ;if there is a lastitem...
  NPrint "First Item in list is:",a() ;print it out...
EndIf
MouseWait
```

See Also:**LastItem**

Function: **LastItem**

Syntax: **LastItem** (*Arrayname()*)**Modes:** Amiga/Blitz**Description:**

Executing **LastItem** will set the specified list array's 'current item' pointer to the very last item in the list array. If there are no items in the list array, **LastItem** will return false (0), otherwise **LastItem** will return true (-1).

Example:

```
; print lastitem in list
;
Dim List a(10)      ;initialize list array
While AddLast(a())  ;fill list array...
  a()=c
  c+1
Wend
```

```

If LastItem(a0)           ;if there is a lastitem...
  NPrint "Last Item in list is:",a0 ;print it out...
Endif

MouseWait

```

See Also:

FirstItem

Statement: PushItem

Syntax: PushItem *Arrayname()*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Executing **PushItem** causes the specified list array's 'current item' pointer to be pushed onto an internal stack. This pointer may be later recalled by executing **PopItem**. The internal item pointer stack allows for up to 8 'pushes'.

Example:

```

;
; pushing items on stack with list
;

Dim List a(10)          ;initialize list array

While AddLast(a0)        ;fill array up with 0...9
  a0=c
  c+1
Wend

ResetList a0            ;reset list

While NextItem(a0)        ;process all items
  If a0=5 Then PushItem a0   ;remember when '5' found
Wend

PopItem a0               ;recall '5'
KillItem a0              ;delete it.

ResetList a0            ;reset list

While NextItem(a0)        ;output list contents
  NPrint a0
Wend

MouseWait

End

```

See Also:

PopItem

Statement: PopItem

Syntax: **PopItem Arrayname()**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

PopItem 'pops' or 'recalls' a previously pushed current item pointer for the specified list array. **Arrayname()** must match the arrayname of the most recently executed **PushItem**.

See Also:

PushItem

Statement: ItemStackSize

Syntax: **ItemStackSize Max Items**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ItemStackSize determines how many 'list' items may be pushed (using the **PushItem** command), before items must be 'Pop'ped off again. For example, executing **ItemStackSize 1000** will allow you to push up to 1000 list items before you run out of item stack space.

See Also:

PushItem, Popitem

Statement: Sort

Syntax: **Sort Arrayname()**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Sort will cause the specified array to be sorted. Only primitive type, 'non-list' arrays may be sorted; it is not possible to sort newtype arrays, or 'list' arrays.

The direction of the sort may be specified using either the **SortUp** or **SortDown** commands.

The default direction used for sorting is ascending - ie: array elements are sorted into a 'low to high' order.

Example:

```

;
; a sort of an example
;
Dim a(9)      ;dimension an 'a' array
For k=0 To 9 ;fill array with random values...
  a(k)=Rnd
Next
Sort a()       ;sort the array
For k=0 To 9 ;print out sorted array
  NPrint a(k)
Next
MouseWait     ;wait for mouse click

```

See Also:

SortUp, SortDown

Statement: SortUp

Syntax: SortUp

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SortUp may be used to force the **Sort** command to sort arrays into ascending order. This means that, after being sorted, an array's contents will be ordered in a 'low to high' manner.

See Also:

Sort, SortDown

Statement: SortDown

Syntax: SortDown

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SortDown may be used to force the **Sort** command to sort arrays into descending order. This means that, after being sorted, an array's contents will be ordered in a 'high to low' manner.

See Also:

Sort, SortUp

ELIEZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL



3. Procedures

This section covers the commands related to Statements and Functions in Blitz 2. Local and global variables as well as recursion are all discussed in detail.

Statement: Statement

Syntax: Statement *Procedurename*{[*Parameter1*[,*Paramater2...*]]}

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Statement declares all following code up to the next **End Statement** as being a 'statement type' procedure.

Up to 6 *Parameters* may be passed to a statement in the form of local variables through which calling parameters are passed.

In Blitz 2, all statements and functions must be declared before they are called.

Example:

```
;
; declare a statement program example
;

Statement hexprint{a} ;declare statement with one parameter
    NPrint Hex$(a) ;print out hex value of parameter
    End Statement ;end of statement

hexprint{16384} ;call statement

MouseWait
```

See Also:

End Statement, Statement Return, Function

Statement: End Statement

Syntax: End Statement

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

End Statement declares the end of a 'statement type' procedure definition. All statement type procedures must be terminated with an **End Statement**.

See Also:

Statement, Statement Return

Statement: Statement Return

Syntax: Statement Return

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Statement Return may be used to prematurely exit from a 'statement type' procedure. Program flow will return to the command following the procedure call.

Example:

```
; statement variable passing program example
;

Statement printeven(a)           ;start of procedure
If a/2<>Int(a/2) Then Statement Return ;if parameter is odd, exit.
NPrint a                         ;else print parameter
End Statement                     ;end of procedure

For k=1 To 10                   ;start of loop
printeven(a)                    ;call statement
Next                           ;end of loop

MouseWait
```

See Also:

End Statement, Function Return

Statement: Function

Syntax: Function [.Type] Procedurename{[Parameter1,[Parameter2...]]}

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Function declares all following code up to the next **End Function** as being a function type procedure. The optional *Type* parameter may be used to determine what type of result is returned by the function. *Type*, if specified, must be one Blitz 2's 6 primitive variable types. If no *Type* is given, the current default type is used.

Up to 6 *Parameters* may be passed to a function in the form of local variables through which calling

parameters are passed.

Functions may return values through the **Function Return** command.

In Blitz 2, all statements and functions must be declared before they are called.

Example:

```

;
; function program example
;

Function$ hexof{a}      ;declare function with one parameter
  Function Return Hex$(a) ;return hex value of parameter
  End Function          ;end of function

  NPrint hexof{16384}    ;call function

  MouseWait
```

See Also:

End Function, **Function Return**, **Statement**

Statement: End Function

Syntax: **End Function**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

End Function declares the end of a 'function type' procedure definition. All function type procedures must be terminated with an **End Function**.

See Also:

Function, **Function Return**

Statement: Function Return

Syntax: **Function Return Expression**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Function Return allows 'function type' procedures to return values to their calling expressions. Function type procedures are always called from within Blitz 2 expressions.

Example:

```
;  
; function example  
;  
Function double(a) ;start of function code...  
Function Return a+a ;return double the passed parameter  
End Function ;end of function code.  
  
For k=1 To 10 ;start of loop  
    NPrint double(k) ;output 'k' doubled  
Next ;end of loop
```

MouseWait

See Also:

End Function, Statement Return

Statement: Shared

Syntax: **Shared Var[,Var...]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

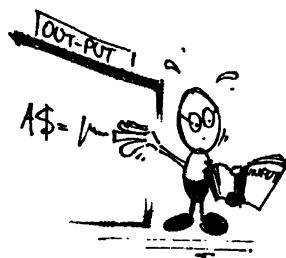
Shared is used to declare certain variables within a procedure definition as being global variables. Any variables appearing within a procedure definition that do not appear in a **Shared** statement are, by default, local variables.

Example:

```
;  
; local variable program example  
;  
  
Statement test{a} ;start of procedure definition  
    Shared k ;use global 'k' variable  
    NPrint k*a ;output 'k' times parameter  
    End Statement ;end of procedure definition  
  
For k=1 To 10 ;start of loop  
    NPrint test{5} ;call 'test'  
    Next ;end of loop
```

MouseWait

4. Input/Output



The following section details Blitz 2's BASIC input/output commands including the print and edit commands as well as joystick input, print formatting and default input and output redirection.

Statement: Print

Syntax: Print *Expression[,Expression...]*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Print allows you to output either strings or numeric values to the current output channel. Commands such as **WindowOutput** or **BitMapOutput** may be used to alter the current output channel.

Example:

```
; print program example
;
Print "Hello "
Print "There! "
a=2
Print "Blitz Basic ",a," at work!"
MouseWait
```

See Also:

NPrint

Statement: NPrint

Syntax: NPrint *Expression[,Expression...]*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

NPrint allows you to output either strings or numeric values to the current output channel. Commands such as **WindowOutput** or **BitMapOutput** may be used to alter the current output channel.

After all *Expressions* have been output, **NPrint** automatically prints a newline character.

Example:

```
; nprint program example
;
NPrint "Hello "
NPrint "There!"
a=2
NPrint "Blitz Basic ",a," at work!"
NPrint "Goodbye..."
MouseWait
```

See Also:

Print

Statement: Format

Syntax: Format *FormatString*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Format allows you to control the output of any numeric values by the **Print** or **NPrint** commands. *FormatString* is an 80 character or less string expression used for formatting information by the **Print** command. Special characters in *FormatString* are used to perform special formatting functions. These special characters are:

Character	Format effect
#	If no digit to print, insert spaces into output
0	If no digit to print, insert zeros ('0') into output
.	Insert decimal point into output
+	Insert sign of value
-	Insert sign of value, only if negative
,	Insert commas every 3 digits to left of number

Any other characters in *FormatString* will appear at appropriate positions in the output.

Here are some example of *FormatStrings* and their output:

FormatString	Value printedOutput
"####.00"	5.2 5.20
"0000.00"	5.20005.20
"##,##,.00"	10240.25 10,240.25
"Total: -#####"	-10.5Total: - 11

Format affects the operation of the **Str\$** function.

See Also:

Str\$

Statement: **FloatMode**

Syntax: **FloatMode Mode**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

FloatMode allows you to control how floating point numbers are output by the **Print** or **NPrint** commands.

Floating point numbers may be displayed in one of two ways - in exponential format, or in standard format. Exponential format displays a floating point number as a value multiplied by ten raised to a power. For example, 10240 expressed exponentially is displayed as '1.024E+4', ie: 1.024 times 10 to the power of 4. Standard format simply prints values 'as is'.

A *Mode* parameter of 1 will cause floating point values to ALWAYS be displayed in exponential format. A *Mode* parameter of -1 will cause floating point values to ALWAYS be displayed in standard format. A *Mode* parameter of 0 will cause Blitz 2 to take a 'best guess' at the most appropriate format to use. This is the default mode for floating point output.

Note that if **Format** has been used to alter numeric output, standard mode will always be used to print floating point numbers.

Example:

```
;  
;floatmode program example  
;  
a.f=10240.25  
NPrint a  
FloatMode 1  
NPrint a  
FloatMode -1  
NPrint a  
MouseWait
```

Function: **Joyx**

Syntax: **Joyx (Port)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Joyx will return the left/right status of a joystick plugged into the specified port. Port must be either 0 or 1, 0 being the port the mouse is normally plugged into. If the joystick is held to the left, **Joyx** will return -1. If the joystick is held to the right, **Joyx** will return 1. If the joystick is held neither left or right, **Joyx** will return 0.

See Also:

Joyy, Joyr, Joyb

Function: **Joyy**

Syntax: **Joyy (Port)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Joyy will return the up/down status of a joystick plugged into the specified port. Port must be either 0 or 1, 0 being the port the mouse is normally plugged into. If the joystick is held upwards, **Joyy** will return -1. If the joystick is held downwrad, **Joyy** will return 1. If the joystick is held neither upwards or downwards, **Joyy** will return 0.

See Also:

Joyx, Joyr, Joyb

Function: **Joyr**

Syntax: **Joyr (Port)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Joyr may be used to determine the rotational direction of a joystick plugged into the specified port. Port must be either 0 or 1, port 0 being the port the mouse is normally plugged into.

Joyr returns a value from 0 through 8 based on the following table:

Joystick direction	Joyr value
Up	0
Up-Right	1
Right	2
Down-Right	3
Down	4
Down-Left	5
Left	6
Up-Left	7
No Direction	8

See Also:

Joyx, Joyy, Joyb

Function: Joyb

Syntax: Joyb (*Port*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Joyb allows you to read the button status of the device plugged into the specified port. *Port* must be either 0 or 1, 0 being the port the mouse is normally plugged into.

If the left button is held down, **Joyb** will return 1. If the right button is held down, **Joyb** will return 2. If both buttons are held down, **Joyb** will return 3. If no buttons are held down, **Joyb** will return 0.

See Also:

Joyx, **Joyy**, **Joyr**

Statement: DefaultInput

Syntax: DefaultInput

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

DefaultInput causes all future **Edit\$** functions to receive their input from the CLI window the Blitz 2 program was run from. This is the default input channel used when a Blitz 2 program is first run.

See Also:

DefaultOutput

Statement: DefaultOutput

Syntax: DefaultOutput

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

DefaultOutput cause all future **Print** statements to send their output to the CLI window the Blitz 2 program was run from. This is the default output channel used when a Blitz 2 program is first run.

See Also:

DefaultInput

Function: **FileRequest\$**

Syntax: **FileRequest\$ (Title\$, Pathname\$, Filename\$)**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

The **FileRequest\$** function will open up a standard Amiga-style file requester on the currently used screen. Program flow will halt until the user either selects a file, or hits the requester's 'Cancel' button. If a file was selected, **FileRequest\$** will return the full file name as a string. If 'Cancel' was selected, **FileRequest\$** will return a null (empty) string.

Title\$ may be any string expression to be used as a title for the file requester.

Pathname\$ MUST be a string variable with a **MaxLen** of at least 160.

Filename\$ MUST be a string variable with a **MaxLen** of at least 64.

Example:

```
;  
; file request example program  
;  
WbToScreen 0          ;use workbench  
WBenchToFront_        ;workbench to front  
MaxLen pa$=160         ;set 'path' string var  
MaxLen fi$=64          ;set 'file' string var  
a$=FileRequest$("Select a File",pa$,fi$) ;do file requester  
WBenchToBack_          ;Workbench to back
```

See Also:

MaxLen

Function: **Edit\$**

Syntax: **Edit\$ ([DefaultString\$], Characters)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Edit\$ is Blitz 2's standard text input command. **Edit\$** normally causes the following chain of events:

- * The optional *DefaultString\$* and a cursor is printed to the display.
- * The program user types in a string of text.
- * When 'RETURN' is hit, **Edit\$** returns the text entered by the program user as a string of character.

Edit\$ operates slightly differently depending on the mode of input at the time of execution. For instance, executing a **WindowInput** command will cause **Edit\$** to receive and print it's input to an Intuition window, whereas executing **FileInput** will cause **Edit\$** to receive it's input from a file.

Characters specifies a maximum number of allowable characters for input. This is extremely useful in

preventing **Edit\$** from destroying display contents.

Example:

```

;
; edit$ program example
;
Print "Please Type in your name:"      ;prompt for a name
a$=Edit$(40)                          ;receive input
NPrint "Hello There ",a$," !"        ;print message and name
MouseWait

```

See Also:

Edit, **Inkey\$**

Function: **Edit**

Syntax: **Edit** (*[DefaultValue]*,*Characters*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Edit is Blitz 2's standard numeric input command. **Edit** normally causes the following chain of events:

- * The optional *DefaultValue* and a cursor is printed to the display.
- * The program user types in a numeric value.
- * When 'RETURN' is hit, **Edit** returns the value entered by the program user.

Edit operates slightly differently depending on the mode of input at the time of execution. For instance, executing a **WindowInput** command will cause **Edit** to receive and print it's input to an Intuition window, whereas executing **FileInput** will cause **Edit** to receive it's input from a file.

Characters specifies a maximum number of allowable characters for input. This is extremely useful in preventing **Edit** from destroying display contents.

Example:

```

;
; edit program example
;
Print "Type in your age:"          ;prompt...
a>Edit(40)                         ;receive age!
If a>=21                           ;are they over 21?
  NPrint "I hope you enjoyed your twenty first!"    ;yes!
Else
  NPrint "I bet you're looking forward to your twenty first!" ;no!
EndIf

MouseWait

```

See Also:

Edit\$, Inkey\$

Function: **Inkey\$**

Syntax: **Inkey\$ [(Characters)]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Inkey\$ may be used to collect one or more characters from the current input channel. The current input channel may be selected using commands such as **WindowInput**, **FileInput** or **BitMapInput**. **Inkey\$** MAY NOT be used from the **DefaultInput** input channel.

Characters refers to the number of characters to collect. The default is one character.

Example:

```
; inkey$ program example
;
Screen 0,3
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$100f,"My Window!",1,2
NPrint "Type away - hit Mouse Button to Quit!"

While Joyb(0)=0  ;loop continuously until a mousebutton down
WaitEvent
Print Inkey$
Wend
```

See Also:

Edit\$, Edit

5. Numeric Functions



This section covers all functions which accept and return only numeric values. Note that all the transcendental functions (eg. **Sin**, **Cos**) operate in radians.

Function: NTSC

Syntax: **NTSC**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This function returns 0 if the display is currently in PAL mode, or -1 if currently in NTSC mode. This may be used to write software which dynamically adjusts itself to different versions of the Amiga computer.

Example:

```
; NTSC test example program
;
If NTSC Then Print "Yo Dude" Else Print "Hello Chaps"
MouseWait
```

See Also:

DispHeight

Function: DispHeight

Syntax: **DispHeight**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

DispHeight will return 256 if executed on a PAL Amiga, or 200 if executed on an NTSC Amiga. This allows programs to open full sized screens, windows etc on any Amiga.

Example:

```
; max display height example program
;
Print "Maximum display height is ",DispHeight
MouseWait
```

See Also:

NTSC

Function: Peek

Syntax: **Peek** [*Type*](*Address*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Peek returns the value found at the memory location specified by *Address*. The value returned depends on the size of the peek. If **Peek.b** is used the byte at memory location *MemLoc* is returned.

If **Peek.w** is used the word at memory location *MemLoc* is returned. And for **Peek.l** or **Peek.q** the long word of the memory location is returned.

Peek\$ may be used to read a null terminated string from memory.

Example:

```
; peek example program
;
NPrint "Exec Base can be found at"
Print Peek.l(4)
MouseWait
```

See Also:

Poke

Function: Abs

Syntax: **Abs** (*Expression*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This function returns the positive equivalent of *Expression*.

Example:

```
Print Abs(-23) ; Prints 23 too
```

See Also:

QAbs

Function: Frac

Syntax: **Frac** (*Expression*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Frac() returns the fractional part of *Expression*.

Example:

Print Frac(23.456) ; Will print .456

See Also:

QFrac

Function: Int

Syntax: **Int** (*Expression*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the Integer part (before the decimal point) of *Expression*.

Example:

Print Int(23.456) ; Will simply print 23

Function: QAbs

Syntax: **QAbs** (*Quick*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

QAbs works just like **Abs** except that the value it accepts is a *Quick*. This enhances the speed at which the function executes quite dramatically. Of course you are limited by the restrictions of the quick type of value.

Example:

Print QAbs(-23) ; Prints 23

See Also:

Abs

Function: **QFrac**

Syntax: **QFrac** (*Quick*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

QFrac() returns the fractional part of a quick value. It works like **Frac()** but accepts a quick value as its argument. It is faster than **Frac()** but has the normal quick value limits.

Example:

```
Print QFrac(23.4) ; Prints .4
```

See Also:

Frac

Function: **QLimit**

Syntax: **QLimit** (*Quick,Low,High*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

QLimit is used to limit the range of a quick number. If *Quick* is greater than or equal to *Low*, and less or equal to *High*, the value of *Quick* is returned. If *Quick* is less than *Low*, then *Low* is returned. If *Quick* is greater than *High*, then *High* is returned.

Example:

```
Print QLimit(150,0,140) ; Prints 140
```

```
Print QLimit(75,90,200) ; Prints 90
```

See Also:

QWrap

Function: **QWrap**

Syntax: **QWrap** (*Quick,Low,High*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

QWrap will wrap the result of the *Quick* expression if *Quick* is greater than or equal to *high*, or less than *low*. If *Quick* is less than *Low*, then *Quick-Low+High* is returned. If *Quick* is greater than or equal to *High*, then *Quick-High+Low* is returned.

Example:

Print QWrap(-5,0,320) ; Prints 315

Print QWrap(325,0,320) ; Prints 5

See Also:

QLimit

Function: Rnd

Syntax: **Rnd [/*(Range)*]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This function returns a random number. If *Range* is not specified then a random decimal is returned between 0 and 1. If *Range* is specified, then a decimal value between 0 and *Range* is returned.

Example:

```
; random numbers program example
;
Screen 0,0,0,320,200,2,0,"1000 RANDOM PLOTS",1,2
ScreensBitMap 0,0
BitMapOutput 0
;
For i=1 To 1000
  Plot Rnd(320),Rnd(200),1 ;generate random numbers for x & y
Next
;
MouseWait
```

Function: Sgn

Syntax: **Sgn (*Expression*)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Sgn returns the sign of *Expression*. If *Expression* is less than 0, then -1 is returned. If *Expression* is equal to 0, then 0 is returned. If *Expression* is greater than 0, then 1 is returned.

Example:

Print Sgn(-23) ; Prints -1

Print Sgn(0) ; Prints 0

Print Sgn(123) ; Prints 1

Function: Cos

Syntax: **Cos** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Cos() returns the Cosine of the value *Float*.

Example:

```
; cosine curve program example
;
Screen 0,0,0,320,200,2,0,"A COSINE CURVE",1,2
ScreensBitMap 0,0
BitMapOutput 0
Locate 0,2:Print " 1"
Locate 0,12:Print " 0"
Locate 0,22:Print "-1"
Locate 19,13:Print "Pi"
Locate 37,13:Print "2Pi"
;
Line 16,20,16,180,2
Line 16,100,319,100,2
;
For k.f=0 To 1 Step .0025
;
Plot k*303+16,Cos(Pi*2*k)*80+100,3
;
Next
;
MouseWait
```

Function: Sin

Syntax: **Sin** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the Sine of the value *Float*.

Example:

```
; sine curve program example
;
Screen 0,0,0,320,200,2,0,"A SINE CURVE",1,2
ScreensBitMap 0,0
BitMapOutput 0
;
```

```

Locate 0,2:Print " 1"
Locate 0,12:Print " 0"
Locate 0,22:Print "-1"
Locate 19,13:Print "Pi"
Locate 37,13:Print "2Pi"
;
Line 16,20,16,180,2
Line 16,100,319,100,2
;
For k,f=0 To 1 Step .0025
;
Plot k*303+16,Sin(Pi*2*k)*80+100,3
;
Next
;
MouseWait

```

Function: Tan

Syntax: **Tan** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the Tangent of the value *Float*.

Example:

```

;
;
; tangent function program example
;
; for this to work, you'll have to turn off overflow
; checking from the runtime errors requester!
;
Screen 0,0,0,320,200,2,0,"A TAN CURVE",1,2
ScreensBitMap 0,0
BitMapOutput 0
;
Locate 0,2:Print " 10"
Locate 0,12:Print " 0"
Locate 0,22:Print "-10"
Locate 19,13:Print "Pi"
Locate 37,13:Print "2Pi"
;
Line 16,20,16,180,2
Line 16,100,319,100,2
;
For k,f=0 To 1 Step .0025
;
Plot k*303+16,Tan(Pi*2*k)*8+100,3
;
Next

```

MouseWait

Function: ACos

Syntax: **ACos** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the ArcCosine of the value *Float*.

Function: ASin

Syntax: **ASin** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the ArcSine of the value *Float*.

Function: ATan

Syntax: **ATan** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the ArcTangent of the value *Float*.

Function: HCos

Syntax: **HCos** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the hyperbolic Cosine of the value *Float*.

Function: HSin

Syntax: **HSin** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the hyperbolic Sine of the value *Float*.

Function: HTan

Syntax: **HTan** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the hyperbolic Tangent of the value *Float*.

Function: Exp

Syntax: **Exp** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns e raised to the power of *Float*.

Function: Sqr

Syntax: **Sqr** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the square root of *Float*.

Example:

```
;  
; square root program example  
;  
opp=20  
adj=50  
hypot=Sqr(opp^2+adj^2) ;Mr. Pythagoras' Rule  
Print hypot  
MouseWait
```

Function: Log10

Syntax: **Log10** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the base 10 logarithm of *Float*.

Function: Log

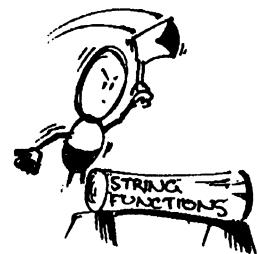
Syntax: **Log** (*Float*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns the natural (base e) logarithm of *Float*.

6. String Functions



String functions include any functions which either return or accept a string expression.

Function: **Left\$**

Syntax: **Left\$ (String\$,Length)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This function returns *Length* leftmost characters of string *String\$*.

Example:

Print Left\$("Hello there.",5): ; Will only print Hello

See Also:

UnLeft\$, Right\$

Function: **Right\$**

Syntax: **Right\$ (String\$,Length)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Right\$() returns the rightmost *Length* characters from string *String\$*.

Example:

Print Right\$("Hello there",5): ; Will just print there

See Also:

UnRight\$, Left\$

Function: **Mid\$**

Syntax: **Mid\$(String\$,Startchar[,Length])**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This function returns *Length* characters of string *String\$* starting at character *Startchar*. If the optional *Length* parameter is omitted, then all characters from *Startchar* up to the end of *String\$* will be returned.

Example:

Print Mid\$("Hello there",4,5): ; Will Print the characters "lo th"

Function: Hex\$

Syntax: **Hex\$ (Expression)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Hex\$() returns an 8 character string equivalent to the hexadecimal representation of *Expression*.

Example:

Print Hex\$(32): ; Will print the string 00000020

See Also:

Bin\$

Function: Bin\$

Syntax: **Bin\$ (Expression)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Hex\$() returns a 32 character string equivalent to the binary representation of *Expression*.

Example:

Print Bin\$(32): ; Will print 0000000000000000000000000000100000

See Also:

Hex\$

Function: Chr\$

Syntax: **Chr\$ (Expression)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Chr\$ returns a one character string equivalent to the ASCII character *Expression*. Ascii is a standard way of coding the characters used by the computer display.

Example:

Print Chr\$(65): ; Will print the letter A

See Also:

Asc

Function: **Asc**

Syntax: **Asc (String\$)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Asc() returns the ASCII value of the first characters in the string *String\$*.

Example:

Print Asc("A"): ; Will print the number 65

See Also:

Chr\$

Function: **String\$**

Syntax: **String\$(String\$,Repeats)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This function will return a string containing *Repeats* sequential occurrences of the string *String\$*.

Example:

Print String\$("Hi!",3): ; Will print Hi!Hi!Hi!

Function: **Instr**

Syntax: **Instr (String\$,Findstring\$,[Startpos])**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Instr attempts to locate *FindString\$* within *String\$*. If a match is found, the character position of the first matching character will be returned. If no match is found, 0 will be returned.

The optional *Startpos* parameter allows you to specify a starting character position for the search.

CaseSense may be used to determine whether the search is case sensitive or not.

Example:

```
Print Instr("Hello there all","all"); Will print 13
```

```
Print Instr("Hello Hello","Hello",2); Will print 7
```

See Also:

CaseSense

Function: Replace\$

Syntax: **Replace\$ (String\$,Findstring\$,Replacestring\$)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Replace\$() will search the string *String\$* for any occurrences of the string *Findstring\$* and replace it with the string *Replacestring\$*.

CaseSense may be used to determine whether the search is case sensitive or not.

Example:

```
Print Replace$("a a a ","a ","b-"); Will print b-b-b-
```

See Also:

CaseSense

Function: Mki\$

Syntax: **Mki\$ (Integer)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This will create a two byte character string, given the two byte numeric value *Numeric*.

Mki\$ is often used before writing integer values to sequential files to save on disk space. When the file is later read in, **Cvi** may be used to convert the string back to an integer.

Example:

Print Mki\$(\$4141): ; Prints "AA"

See Also:

Cvi

Function: **Mkl\$**

Syntax: **Mkl\$ (Long)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This will create a four byte character string, given the four byte numeric value *Long*.

Mkl\$ is often used when writing long values to sequential files to save on disk space. When the file is later read in, **Cvl** may be used to convert the string back to a long.

See Also:

Cvl

Function: **Mkq\$**

Syntax: **Mkq\$ (Quick)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This will create a four byte character string, given the four byte numeric value *Quick*.

Mkq\$ is often used when writing quick values to sequential files to save on disk space. When the file is later read in, **Cvq** may be used to convert the string back to a quick.

See Also:

Cvq

Function: **Cvi**

Syntax: **Cvi (String\$)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Cvi returns an integer value equivalent to the left 2 characters of *String\$*. This is the logical opposite of **Mki\$**.

Example:

Print Cvi("AA"): ; Prints 16705

See Also:

Mki\$

Function: **Cvl**

Syntax: **Cvl (String\$)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Cvl returns a long value equivalent to the left 4 characters of *String\$*. This is the logical opposite of **Mkl\$**.

See Also:

Mkl\$

Function: **Cvq**

Syntax: **Cvq (String\$)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Cvq returns a quick value equivalent to the left 4 characters of *String\$*. This is the logical opposite of **Mkq\$**.

See Also:

Mkq\$

Function: **Len**

Syntax: **Len (String\$)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Len returns the length of the string *String\$*.

Example:

Print Len("Hippo"): ; Will print 5

Function: **UnLeft\$**

Syntax: **UnLeft\$ (String\$,Length)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

UnLeft\$() removes the rightmost *Length* characters from the string *String\$*.

Example:

```
Print UnLeft$("GoodBye",3); Will print Good  
MouseWait
```

See Also:

Left\$

Function: **UnRight\$**

Syntax: **UnRight\$ (String\$,Length)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

UnRight\$() removes the leftmost *Length* characters from the string *String\$*.

Example:

```
Print UnRight$("GoodBye",4); Will print Bye
```

Function: **StripLead\$**

Syntax: **StripLead\$ (String\$,Expression)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

StripLead\$ removes all leading occurrences of the ASCII character specified by *Expression* from the string *String\$*.

Example:

```
Print StripLead$("AABBAAB",65) ;Will print BBAAB
```

See Also:

StripTrail\$

Function: StripTrail\$

Syntax: **StripTrail\$ (String\$, Expression)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

StripTrail\$ removes all trailing occurrences of the ASCII character specified by *Expression* from the string *String\$*.

Example:

```
Print StripTrail$("AABBAAB",6); ;Will print AABBA
```

See Also:

StripLead\$

Function: LSet\$

Syntax: **LSet\$ (String\$, Characters)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This function returns a string of *Characters* characters long. The string *String\$* will be placed at beginning of this string. If *String\$* is shorter than *Characters* the right hand side is padded with spaces. If it is longer, it will be truncated.

Example:

```
Print LSet$("Guy Fawkes",6); ; Will print "Guy Fa"  
Print LSet$("Guy",6); ; Will print "Guy "
```

See Also:

RSet\$, Centre\$

Function: RSet\$

Syntax: **RSet\$ (String\$, Characters)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This function returns a string of *Characters* characters long. The string *String\$* will be placed at end of this string. If *String\$* is shorter than *Characters* the left hand side is padded with spaces. If it is longer, it will be truncated.

Example:

```
Print RSet$("Guy Fawkes",6); ; Will print "Fawkes"  
Print RSet$("Guy",6); ; Will print " Guy"
```

See Also:

LSet\$, Centre\$

Function: **Centre\$**

Syntax: **Centre\$ (String\$,Characters)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This function returns a string of *Characters* characters long. The string *String\$* will be centered in the resulting string. If *String\$* is shorter than *Characters* the left and right sides will be padded with spaces. If it is longer, it will be truncated on either side.

Example:

```
Print Centre$("Guy Fawkes",6); ; Will print "y Fawk"  
Print Centre$("Guy",6); ; Will print " Guy "
```

See Also:

LSet\$, RSet\$

Function: **LCase\$**

Syntax: **LCase\$ (String\$)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This function returns the string *String\$* converted into lowercase.

Example:

```
Print LCase$("ABCDEFG"); ; Prints abcdefg
```

See Also:

UCase\$

Function: **UCase\$**

Syntax: **UCase\$ (String\$)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This function returns the string *String\$* converted to uppercase.

Example:

```
Print UCase$("hijklm"); Prints HIJKLM
```

See Also:**Lcase\$**

Function: CaseSense

Syntax: **CaseSense** *On|Off***Modes:** Amiga/Blitz**Description:**

CaseSense allows you to control the searching mode used by the **Instr** and **Replace\$** functions.

CaseSense On indicates that an exact match must be found.

CaseSense Off indicates that alphabetic characters may be matched even if they are not in the same case.

CaseSense On is the default search mode.

See Also:**Instr, Replace\$**

Function: Val

Syntax: **Val** (*String\$*)**Modes:** Amiga/Blitz**Description:**

This functions converts the string *String\$* into a numeric value and returns this value. When converting the string, the conversion will stop the moment either a non numeric value or a second decimal point is reached.

Example:

```
Print Val("1234"); Will Print 1234  
Print Val("-23"); Prints -23  
Print Val("One hundred"); Will Print 0
```

See Also:

Str\$, UStr\$

Function: Str\$

Syntax: **Str\$ (Expression)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns a string equivalent of the numeric value *Expression*. This now allows you to perform string operations on this string.

If the **Format** command has been used to alter numeric output, this will be applied to the resultant string.

Example:

```
a$=Str$(12345)  
Print Len(a$) ; Prints 5
```

See Also:

Val, UStr\$, Format

Function: UStr\$

Syntax: **UStr\$ (Expression)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

This returns a string equivalent of the numeric value *Expression*. This now allows you to perform string operations on this string.

Unlike **Str\$**, **UStr\$** is not affected by any active **Format** commands.

See Also:

Val, Str\$, Format

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

7. File Access



Blitz 2 supports 2 modes of file access - sequential, and random access. The following section covers the Blitz 2 commands that open, close and operate on these two types of files.

Function: OpenFile

Syntax: **OpenFile** (*File#*,*Filenam\$*)

Modes: Amiga

Description:

OpenFile attempts to open the file specified by *Filenam\$*. If the file was successfully opened, **OpenFile** will return true (-1), otherwise, **OpenFile** will return false (0).

Files opened using **OpenFile** may be both written to and read from. If the file specified by *Filenam\$*, did not already exist before the file was opened, it will be created by **OpenFile**.

Files opened with **OpenFile** are intended for use by the random access file commands, although it is quite legal to use these files in a sequential manner.

Example:

```

;
; random access file program example
;

If OpenFile(0,"ram:test")      ;open random access file.
  MaxLen c$=32                ;set maximum length of c$
    Fields 0,a,b,c$           ;set up fields in a record
    a=10                      ;initialize some variables...
    b=16
    c$="Hello There!"
    Put 0,0                   ;write record 0
    CloseFile 0                ;close the file
    If OpenFile(0,"ram:test")  ;reopen file
      Fields 0,a,b,c$         ;set up fields again
      a=0                      ;clear variables
      b=0
      c$=""
      Get 0,0                  ;read record 0
      NPrint "a=",a," b=",b," c$=",c$
      CloseFile 0                ;close the file
      MouseWait
    End
  Endif
Endif

NPrint "Couldn't open ram:test" ;file open failed!

```

MouseWait

See Also:

CloseFile, Fields, Get, Put, MaxLen

Function: ReadFileSyntax: **ReadFile (File#,Filename\$)**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

ReadFile opens an already existing file specified by *Filename\$* for sequential reading. If the specified file was successfully opened, **ReadFile** will return true (-1), otherwise **ReadFile** will return false (0).

Once a file is open using **ReadFile**, **FileInput** may be used to read information from it.

Example:

```
;  
; read file program example  
;  
  
If WriteFile(0,"ram:test")  
  FileOutput 0  
  Print "Hello!"  
  CloseFile 0  
  DefaultOutput  
  If ReadFile(0,"ram:test")  
    FileInput 0  
    NPrint Edit$(80)  
    CloseFile 0  
    DefaultInput  
    MouseWait  
    End  
  EndIf  
EndIf  
  
NPrint "Couldn't open ram:test!"      ;file open failed!
```

MouseWait

See Also:

CloseFile, WriteFile, FileInput, FileOutput

Function: WriteFile

Syntax: **WriteFile** (*File#,Filename\$*)

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WriteFile creates a new file, specified by *Filename\$*, for the purpose of sequential file writing. If the file was successfully opened, **WriteFile** will return true (-1), otherwise, **WriteFile** will return false (0).

A file opened using **WriteFile** may be written to by using the **FileOutput** command.

See Also:

CloseFile, **ReadFile**, **FileInput**, **FileOutput**

Statement: CloseFile

Syntax: **CloseFile** *File#*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

CloseFile is used to close a file opened using one of the file open functions (**FileOpen**, **ReadFile**, **WriteFile**). This should be done to all files when they are no longer required.

See Also:

OpenFile, **ReadFile**, **WriteFile**

Statement: Fields

Syntax: **Fields** *File#,Var[,Var...]*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Fields is used to set up fields of a random access file record. Once **Fields** is executed, **Get** and **Put** may be used to read and write information to and from the file.

The *Var* parameters specify a list of variables you wish to be either read from, or written to the file.

When a **Put** is executed, the values held in these variables will be transferred to the file.

When a **Get** is executed, these variables will take on values read from the file.

Any string variables in the variable list MUST have been initialized to contain a maximum number of characters. This is done using the **MaxLen** command. These string variables must NEVER grow to be longer than their defined maximum length.

Example:

```
; put and get random access file program example
;

If OpenFile(0,"ram:test")      ;open random access file.
  MaxLen c$=32                ;set maximum length of c$
  Fields 0,a,f,c$,b,w        ;set up fields in a record
  a=Sqr(Pi)                   ;initialize some variables...
  b=16
  c$="RANDOM ACCESS!"
  Put 0,0                      ;write record 0
  CloseFile 0                  ;close the file
  If OpenFile(0,"ram:test")    ;reopen file
    Fields 0,a,b,c$          ;set up fields again
    a=0                        ;clear variables
    b=0
    c$=""
    Get 0,0                    ;read record 0
    NPrint "a=",a," b=",b," c$=",c$
    CloseFile 0                ;close the file
    MouseWait
  End
  Endif
Endif
  NPrint "Couldn't open ram:test" ;file open failed!
  MouseWait
```

See Also:

OpenFile, **CloseFile**, **Get**, **Put**, **MaxLen**

Statement: Put

Syntax: Put *File#*,*Record*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Put is used to transfer the values contained in a **Fields** variable list to a particular record in a random access file. When using **Put** to increase the size of a random access file, you may only add to the immediate end of file. For example, if you have a random access file with 5 records in it, it is illegal to put record number 7 to the file until record number 6 has been created.

See Also:

OpenFile, **CloseFile**, **Fields**, **Get**

Statement: Get

Syntax: **Get** *File#,Record*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Get is used to transfer information from a particular record of a random access file into a variable list set up by the **Fields** command. Only records which also exist may be 'got'.

See Also:

OpenFile, **CloseFile**, **Fields**, **Put**

Statement: FileOutput

Syntax: **FileOutput** *File#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **FileOutput** command causes the output of all subsequent **Print** and **NPrint** commands to be sent to the specified sequential file. When the file is later closed, **Print** statements should be returned to an appropriate output channel (eg: **DefaultOutput** or **WindowOutput**).

See Also:

WriteFile, **CloseFile**

Statement: FileInput

Syntax: **FileInput** *File#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **FileInput** command causes all subsequent **Edit**, **Edit\$** and **Inkey\$** commands to receive their input from the specified file. When the file is later closed, input should be redirected to an appropriate channel (eg: **DefaultInput** or **WindowInput**).

See Also:

ReadFile, **CloseFile**

Statement: FileSeek

Syntax: **FileSeek** *File#,Position*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

FileSeek allows you to move to a particular point in the specified file. The first piece of data in a file is at position 0, the second at position 1 and so on. *Position* must not be set to a value greater than the length of the file.

Used in conjunction with **OpenFile** and **Lof**, **FileSeek** may be used to 'append' to a file.

Example:

```
;  
; file seek random access file program example  
;  
  
If WriteFile(0,"ram:test")      ;create new file  
  FileOutput 0                 ;send print there...  
  NPrint "Hello!"              ;print something!  
  CloseFile 0                  ;close file  
  If OpenFile(0,"ram:test")    ;open file again  
    FileSeek 0,Lof(0)          ;fileseek to end of the file  
    NPrint "There!"            ;add to the file  
    CloseFile 0                ;close file again  
    DefaultOutput              ;send output back to normal  
    If ReadFile(0,"ram:test")  ;open file for reading  
      FileInput 0              ;get input from file  
      NPrint Edit$(80)         ;read file and print to screen  
      NPrint Edit$(80)         ;ditto  
    If ReadFile(0,"ram:test")  ;open file for reading  
      FileInput 0              ;get input from file  
      NPrint Edit$(80)         ;read file and print to screen  
      NPrint Edit$(80)         ;ditto  
      MouseWait  
    End  
  EndIf  
EndIf  
EndIf  
  
NPrint "Couldn't open ram:test!" ;file open failed!  
  
MouseWait
```

See Also:

OpenFile, **CloseFile**, **Lof**, **Eof**, **Loc**

Function: Lof

Syntax: **Lof** (*File#*)

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Lof will return the length, in bytes, of the specified file.

See Also:

OpenFile, **CloseFile**, **Eof**, **Loc**

Function: Eof

Syntax: **Eof** (*File#*)

Modes: Amiga

Description:

The **Eof** function allows you to determine if you are currently positioned at the end of the specified file. If so, **Eof** will return true (-1), otherwise **Eof** will return false (0).

If you are at the end of a file, any further writing to the file will increase it's length, while any further reading from the file will cause an error.

Example:

```

;
; random access file program example
;

If WriteFile(0,"ram:test")    ;create a new file
  FileOutput 0                ;send print to the file...
  For k=1 To Rnd(50)+50       ;print a random number of
  Print Chr$(Rnd(26)+65)     ;random alphabetic characters
  Next
  CloseFile 0                 ;close the file
  DefaultOutput               ;send output back to screen
  If ReadFile(0,"ram:test")   ;open file for reading
    FileInput 0                ;get input from file
    While NOT Eof(0)           ;while end of file not reached...
      Print Inkey$              ;print next character from file
      Wend                      ;and back for more
    MouseWait
    End
  Endif
Endif

NPrint "Unable to open ram:test"    ;couldn't open file

End

```

See Also:

Lof, Loc

Function: **Loc**

Syntax: **Loc** (*File#*)

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Loc may be used to determine your current position in the specified file. When a file is first opened, you will be at position 0 in the file.

See Also:

Lof, Eof

Statement: **DosBuffLen**

Syntax: **DosBuffLen** *Bytes*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

All Blitz 2 file handling is done through the use of special buffering routines. This is done to increase the speed of file handling, especially in the case of sequential files.

Initially, each file opened is allocated a 2048 byte buffer. However, if memory is tight this buffer size may be lowered using the **DosBuffLen** command.

Statement: **KillFile**

Syntax: **KillFile** *Filename\$*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

The **KillFile** command will simply attempt to delete the specified file. No error will be returned if the file could not be deleted.

Statement: **CatchDosErrs**

Syntax: **CatchDosErrs**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Whenever you are executing AmigaDos I/O (for example, reading or writing a file), there is always the possibility of something going wrong (for example, disk not inserted... read/write error etc.). Normally, when such problems occur, AmigaDos displays a suitable requester on the WorkBench window. However, by executing **CatchDosErrs** you can force such requesters to open on a Blitz 2 window.

The window you wish dos error requesters to open on should be the currently used window at the time **CatchDosErrs** is executed.

Example:

```

;
; catdoserrs example program
;

Screen 0,3
Window 0,0,12,320,DispHeight-12,$1008,"My Window",1,2
CatchDosErrs           ;trap dos errs to our window!
If ReadFile(0,"dummydev:dummyfile") ;nonsense device
;
Else
  Print "Can't open file!"
EndIf
Repeat           ;wait...
Until WaitEvent=$200      ;for window closed.
;
```

Statement: **ReadMem**

Syntax: **ReadMem** *File#*,*Address*,*Length*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

ReadMem allows you to read a number of bytes, determined by *Length*, into an absolute memory location, determined by *Address*, from an open file specified by *File#*.

Be careful using **ReadMem**, as writing to absolute memory may have serious consequences if you don't know what you're doing!

See Also:

WriteMem

Statement: WriteMem

Syntax: **WriteMem** *File#,Address,Length*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WriteMem allows you to write a number of bytes, determined by *Length*, from an absolute memory location, determined by *Address*, to an open file specified by *File#*.

See Also:

ReadMem

8. Compiler Directives



The following section refers to the Blitz 2 Compiler Directives, commands which affect how a program is compiled. Conditional compiling, macros, include files and more are covered in this chapter.

Directive: USEPATH

Syntax: USEPATH *Pathtext*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

USEPATH allows you to specify a 'shortcut' path when dealing with NEWTYPE variables. Consider the following lines of code:

```
aliens()\x=160
aliens()\y=100
aliens()\xs=10
aliens()\ys=-10
```

USEPATH can be used to save you some typing, like so:

```
USEPATH aliens()
\x=160
\y=100
\xs=10
\ys=-10
```

Whenever Blitz2 encounters a variable starting with the backslash character ('\'), it simply inserts the current USEPATH text before the backslash.

See Also:

NEWTYPE

Directive: BLITZ

Syntax: BLITZ

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **BLITZ** directive is used to enter Blitz mode. For a full discussion on Amiga/Blitz mode, please refer to the programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers Guide.

See Also:

AMIGA, QAMIGA

Directive: AMIGA

Syntax: AMIGA

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **AMIGA** directive is used to enter Amiga mode. For a full discussion on Amiga/Blitz mode, please refer to the programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers Guide.

See Also:

BLITZ, QAMIGA

Directive: QAMIGA

Syntax: QAMIGA

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **QAMIGA** directive is used to enter Quick Amiga mode. For a full discussion on Amiga/Blitz mode, please refer to the programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers Guide.

See Also:

BLITZ, AMIGA

Directive: INCLUDE

Syntax: INCLUDE *Filename*

Modes: N/A

Description:

INCLUDE is a compile time directive which causes the specified file, *Filename*, to be compiled as part of the programs object code. The file must be in tokenised form (ie: saved from the Blitz 2 editor) - ascii files may not be **INCLUDE**'d.

INCDIR may be used to specify a path for *Filename*.

Filename may be optionally quote enclosed to avoid tokenisation problems.

See Also:

XINCLUDE, INCBIN

Directive: **XINCLUDE**

Syntax: **XINCLUDE** *Filename*

Modes: N/A

Description:

XINCLUDE stands for exclusive include. **XINCLUDE** works identically to **INCLUDE** with the exception that **XINCLUDE**'d files are only ever included once. For example, if a program has 2 **XINCLUDE** statements with the same *filename*, only the first **XINCLUDE** will have any effect.

INCDIR may be used to specify a path for *Filename*.

Filename may be optionally quote enclosed to avoid tokenisation problems.

Example:

XINCLUDE incfilename\$;*this will do nothing... 'incfile' has already been ;included*

See Also:

INCLUDE, INCBIN

Directive: **INCBIN**

Syntax: **INCBIN** *Filename*

Modes: N/A

Description:

INCBIN allows you to include a binary file in your object code. This is mainly of use to assembler language programmers, as having big chunks of binary data in the middle of a BASIC program is not really a good idea.

INCDIR may be used to specify an AmigaDos path for *Filename*.

Filename may be optionally quote enclosed to avoid tokenisation problems.

Directive: INCDIR

Syntax: **INCDIR** *Pathname*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **INCDIR** command allows you to specify an AmigaDos path to be prefixed to any filenames specified by any of **INCLUDE**, **XINCLUDE** or **INCBIN** commands.

Pathname may be optionally quote enclosed to avoid tokenisation problems.

Example:

```
INCDIR ":Myincs/"
INCLUDE mysource.src
```

See Also:

INCLUDE, **XINCLUDE**, **INCBIN**

Directive: CNIF

Syntax: **CNIF** *Constant Comparison Constant*

Modes: N/A

Description:

CNIF allows you to conditionally compile a section of program code based on a comparison of 2 constants. *Comparison* should be one of '<', '>', '=' , '<>', '<=' or '>='. If the comparison proves to be true, then compiling will continue as normal. If the comparison proves to be false, then no object code will be generated until a matching **CEND** is encountered.

Please refer to the Programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers Guide for more information on conditional compiling.

Example:

```
;
; conditional debugging example
;

#debugit=1      ;a debug flag.

For k=1 To 10    ;start of loop
  CNIF #debugit=1 ;is debug flag=1 ?
  NPrint k        ;yes, print out value of 'k'
  CEND            ;end of conditional compiling.
Next

MouseWait
```

See Also:

CEND, CELSE, CSIF

Directive: **CEND**

Syntax: **CEND**

Modes: N/A

Description:

CEND marks the end of a block of conditionally compiled code. **CEND** must always appear somewhere following a **CNIF** or **CSIF** directive.

Please refer to the Programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers Guide for more information on conditional compiling.

See Also:

CNIF, CSIF, CELSE

Directive: **CSIF**

Syntax: **CSIF "String" Comparison "String"**

Modes: N/A

Description:

CSIF allows you to conditionally compile a section of program code based on a comparison of 2 literal strings. *Comparison* should be one of '<', '>', '=', '<>', '<=' or '>='. Both strings must be quote enclosed literal strings. If the comparison proves to be true, then compiling will continue as normal. If the comparison proves to be false, then no object code will be generated until a matching **CEND** is encountered.

CSIF is of most use in macros for checking macro parameters.

Please refer to the Programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers Guide for more information on conditional compiling.

Example:

```
;
; macro example program with cerr
;

Macro test      ;define test macro!
CSIF '1=""     ;check parameter
CERR "Illegal Macro Parameter" ;generate error if null!
CEND           ;NPrint "1"          ;print parameter
End Macro      ;end of macro definition

!test{hello}    ;this will compile OK
```

!test ;*this will generate an error!*

See Also:

CEND, CNIF, CELSE

Directive: **CELSE**

Syntax: **CELSE**

Modes: N/A

Description:

CELSE may be used between a **CNIF** or **CSIF**, and a **CEND** to cause code to be compiled when a constant comparison proves to be false.

Please refer to the Programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers Guide for more information on conditional compiling.

See Also:

CNIF, CSIF, CEND

Directive: **CERR**

Syntax: **CERR** *Errormessage*

Modes: N/A

Description:

CERR allows a program to generate compile-time error messages. **CERR** is normally used in conjunction with macros and conditional compiling to generate errors when incorrect macro parameters are encountered.

Please refer to the Programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers Guide for more information on conditional compiling.

Directive: **Macro**

Syntax: **Macro** *Macroname*

Modes: N/A

Description:

Macro is used to declare the start of a macro definition. All text following **Macro**, up until the next **End Macro**, will be included in the macro's contents.

Please refer to the Programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers Guide for more information on macros.

Example:

```

;
; simple macro program example
;

Macro test          ;start of 'test' macro definition
    NPrint "Hello!"   ;macro contents...
    NPrint "This is a Macro!" ;...
End Macro           ;end of 'test' macro

!test                ;insert macro...!test                      ;insert macro

```

MouseWait

See Also:

End Macro

Statement: End Macro

Syntax: End Macro

Modes: N/A

Description:

End Macro is used to finish a macro definition. Macro definitions are set up using the **Macro** command.

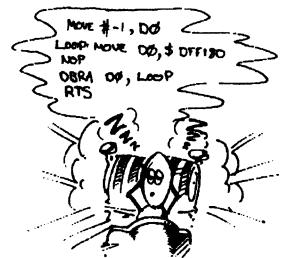
Please refer to the Programming chapter of the Blitz 2 Programmers Guide for more information on macros.

See Also:

Macro

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

9. Assembler



This section will cover commands related to Blitz 2's in-line assembler. It is assumed that readers of this section are already knowledgeable in 68000 assembly language, as no attempt will be made to teach this subject.

Blitz 2's assembler is very easy to use. All 68000 mnemonics are tokenised as if they were BASIC keywords, and are assembled into machine code when a program is compiled. 68000 code may be intermixed freely with basic, though of course care must be taken not to upset the system.

If you are wanting to use the Blitz 2 assembler for writing straight machine code programs, then you are free to treat Blitz 2 as if it was simply an assembler instead of a compiler. In fact, if you enable runtime error checking, Blitz 2 will even attempt to trap any GURU's in your code! However, if you are wanting to intermix assembly language with BASIC, there are some important rules you must follow:

- * Address registers A4-A6 must be preserved and restored by any assembly language routines. Blitz 2 uses A5 as a global variable base, A4 as a local variable base, and tries to keep A6 from having to be re-loaded too often.

The Blitz 2 assembler does have some limitations:

- * The Absolute Short addressing mode is not supported.
- * Short Branches are not supported.
- * Any assembler expressions MUST use curly brackets ('{' and '}') to force operator precedence.

Apart from this, the Blitz 2 assembler operates identically to most commercially available assemblers.

Statement: DC

Syntax: **DC** [.Size] Data[,Data...]

Description:

DC stands for 'define constant', and may be used to define areas of data for assembler programs.

Statement: DCB

Syntax: **DCB** [.Size] Repeats,Data

Description:

DCB stand for 'define constant block'. **DCB** allows you to insert a repeating series of the same value into your assembler programs.

Statement: DS

Syntax: **Ds [.***Size***] Length**

Description:

DS stands for 'define storage'. This simply inserts a 'gap' into a program, which may be used as a data storage area. The constants of DS storage areas will be unpredictable when a program is first run.

Statement: EVEN

Syntax: **EVEN**

Description:

EVEN allows you to word align Blitz 2's internal program counter. This may be necessary if a **DC**, **DCB** or **DS** statement has caused the program counter to be left at an odd address.

Statement: GetReg

Syntax: **GetReg 68000 Reg,Expression**

Description:

GetReg allows you to transfer the result of a BASIC expression to a 68000 register. The result of the expression will first be converted into a long value before being moved to the data register.

GetReg should only be used to transfer expressions to one of the 8 data registers (d0-d7).

GetReg will use the stack to temporarily store any registers used in calculation of the expression.

Statement: PutReg

Syntax: **PutReg 68000 Reg,Variable**

Description:

PutReg may be used to transfer a value from any 68000 register (d0-d7/a0-a7) into a BASIC variable. If the specified variable is a string, long, float or quick, then all 4 bytes from the register will be transferred. If the specified variable is a word or a byte, then only the relevant low bytes will be transferred.

Statement: SysJsr

Syntax: **SysJsr Routine**

Description:

SysJsr allows you to call any of Blitz 2's system routines from your own program. *Routine* specifies a routine number to call.

Statement: **TokeJsr**

Syntax: **TokeJsr** *Token[,Form]*

Description:

TokeJsr allows you to call any of Blitz 2's library based routines. *Token* refers to either a token number, or an actual token name. *Form* refers to a particular form of the token. A full list of all token numbers with their various forms will be available shortly from Acid Software.

Statement: **ALibJsr**

Syntax: **ALibJsr** *Token[,Form]*

Description:

ALibJsr is only used when writing Blitz 2 libraries. **ALibJsr** allows you to call a routine from another library from within your own library. Please refer to the *Library Writing* section of the programmers guide for more information on library writing.

Statement: **BLibJsr**

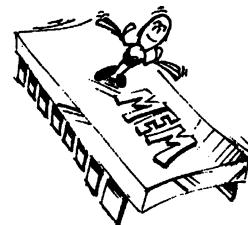
Syntax: **BLibJsr** *Token[,Form]*

Description:

BLibJsr is only used when writing Blitz 2 libraries. **BLibJsr** allows you to call a routine from another library from within your own library. Please refer to the *Library Writing* section of the programmers guide for more information on library writing.

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

10. Memory Access



This section deals with low-level commands which allow you access to the Amiga's memory.

Be very careful when using any of the commands in this section, as it is very easy to crash your Amiga by careless **Pokeing** or **Calling**.

Statement: Poke

Syntax: **Poke** [.*Type*] *Address,Data*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Poke** command will place the specified *Data* into the absolute memory location specified by *Address*. The size of the Poke may be specified by the optional *Type* parameter. For example, to poke a byte into memory, you would use **Poke.b**; to poke a word into memory you would use **Poke.w**; and to poke a long word into memory you would use **Poke.l**.

In addition, strings may be poked into memory by use of **Poke\$**. This will cause the ascii code of all characters in the string specified by *Data* to be poked, byte by byte, into consecutive memory locations. An extra 0 is also poked past the end of the string.

See Also:

Peek, Peeks\$, Call

Function: Peek

Syntax: **Peek** [.*Type*](*Address*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Peek** function returns the contents of the absolute memory location specified by *Address*. The optional *Type* parameter allows peeking of different sizes. For example, to peek a byte, you would use **Peek.b**; to peek a word, you would use **Peek.w**; and to peek a long, you would use **Peek.l**.

It is also possible to peek a string using **Peeks\$**. This will return a string of characters read from consecutive memory locations until a byte of 0 is found.

See Also:

Poke, Peeks\$, Call

Function: Peeks\$

Syntax: **Peeks\$ (Address,length)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Peeks\$ will return a string of characters corresponding to bytes peeked from consecutive memory locations starting at *Address*, and *Length* characters in length.

See Also:

Peek, Poke, Call

Statement: Call

Syntax: **Call Address**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Call will cause program flow to be transferred to the absolute memory location specified by *Address*. PLEASE NOTE! **Call** is for advanced programmers only, as incorrect use of **Call** can lead to severe problems - GURUS etc!

A 68000 JSR instruction is used to transfer program flow, so an RTS may be used to transfer back to the Blitz 2 program.

Please refer to the 'Assembler' section of the reference guide for the rules machine code programs must follow to operate correctly within the Blitz 2 environment.

Example:

```
;  
; a machine code example  
;  
a.l=AllocMem_(14,1)  
;read machine code and poke it in:  
For k=0 To 12 Step 2  
    Read w.w  
    Poke.w a+k,w  
Next  
;call machine code:  
Call a  
MouseWait  
;free up allocated memory:  
FreeMem_ a,14  
;  
;a machine code program...  
Data.w $70ff,$33c0,$00df,$f180,$51c8,$fff8,$4e75
```

See Also:

Poke, Peek, Peeks\$

BLIZZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

11. Program Startup



This section covers all commands dealing with how an executable file goes about starting up. This includes the ability to allow your programs to run from Workbench, and to pick up parameters supplied through the CLI.

Statement: **WBStartup**

Syntax: **WBStartup**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

By executing **WBStartup** at some point in your program, your program will be given the ability to run from Workbench. A program run from Workbench which does NOT include the **WBStartup** command will promptly crash if an attempt is made to run it from Workbench.

Function: **NumPars**

Syntax: **NumPars**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **NumPars** function allows an executable file to determine how many parameters were passed to it by either Workbench or the CLI. Parameters passed from the CLI are typed following the program name and separated by spaces.

For example, let's say you have created an executable program called myprog, and run it from the CLI in the following way:

`myprog file1 file2`

In this case, **NumPars** would return the value '2' - 'file1' and 'file2' being the 2 parameters.

Programs run from Workbench are only capable of picking up 1 parameter through the use of either the parameter file's 'Default Tool' entry in its '.info' file, or by use of multiple selection through the 'Shift' key.

If no parameters are supplied to an executable file, **NumPars** will return 0.

During program development, the 'CLI Argument' menu item in the 'COMPILER' menu allows you to test out CLI parameters.

Example:

```
;  
; numpars program example  
;  
;  
:before running this program, enter several items of text, space  
:separated, into the 'CLI Argument' requester.
```

```
For k=1 To NumPars  
    NPrint Par$(k)  
Next
```

```
MouseWait
```

See Also:

Pars\$

Function: **Par\$**

Syntax: **Par\$ (Parameter)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Par\$ return a string equivalent to a parameter passed to an executable file through either the CLI or Workbench. Please refer to **NumPars** for more information on parameter passing.

Statement: **CloseEd**

Syntax: **CloseEd**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **CloseEd** statement will cause the Blitz 2 editor screen to 'close down' when programs are executed from within Blitz 2. This may be useful when writing programs which use a large amount of chip memory, as the editor screen itself occupies about 40K of chip memory.

CloseEd will have no effect on executable files run outside of the Blitz 2 environment.

Example:

```
;  
; closeed program example  
;  
CloseEd  
Print "Hello...The editor screen has gone!"
```

MouseWait

See Also:

NoCli

Statement: **NoCli**

Syntax: NoCli

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

NoCli will prevent the normal 'Default Cli' from opening when programs are executed from within Blitz 2. **NoCli** has no effect on executable files run outside of the Blitz 2 environment.

See Also:

CloseEd

ELIZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

12. Object Handling



Objects are Blitz 2's way of controlling data concerned with windows, shapes etc. The following section covers the commands available to operate on such objects.

Statement: Use

Syntax: Use *Objectname Object#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Use will cause the Blitz 2 object specified by *Objectname* and *Object#* to become the currently used object.

Example:

```

;
; screens and windows program example
;

Screen 0,3           ;open a screen & 4 windows...

Window 1,0,0,160,100,$100f,"Window 1",1,2
Window 2,160,0,160,100,$100f,"Window 2",1,2
Window 3,0,100,160,100,$100f,"Window 3",1,2
Window 4,160,100,160,100,$100f,"Window 4",1,2

For k=1 To 4          ;start of loop
  Use Window k        ;use window 'k'
  NPrint "Currently using" ;output text...
  NPrint "Window#::",k
Next                  ;end of loop

MouseWait

```

See Also:

Free

Statement: Free

Syntax: Free *Objectname Object#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Free is used to free a Blitz 2 object. Any memory consumed by the object's existance will be free'd up, and in the case of things such as windows and screens, the display may be altered.
Attempting to free a non-existent object will have no effect.

Example:

```
; screens and windows program example
;

Screen 0,3           ;open intuition screen & 4 windows...

Window 1,0,0,160,100,$f,"Window 1",1,2
Window 2,160,0,160,100,$f,"Window 2",1,2
Window 3,0,100,160,100,$f,"Window 3",1,2
Window 4,160,100,160,100,$f,"Window 4",1,2

c=0                  ;counter for number of windows closed
Repeat               ;repeat...
  a.l=WaitEvent      ;wait for something to happen
  If a=512           ;close window ?
    Free Window EventWindow ;Yes, free window...
    c+1               ;and increment counter
  EndIf
Until c=4            ;until all windows closed.
```

See Also:

Use

Function: USED

Syntax: Used ObjectName

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Used returns the currently used object number. This is useful for routines which need to operate on the currently used object, also interrupts should restore currently used object settings.

Example:

```
; used example
;

BitMap 0,320,200,1
BitMap 1,320,200,1
Use BitMap 0

NPrint Used BitMap ;used returns currently used object number

MouseWait
```

See also:

Use

Function: **Addr**

Syntax: **Addr Objectname(Object#)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Addr is a low-level function allowing advanced programmers the ability to find where a particular Blitz 2 object resides in RAM. An appendix at the end of this manual lists all Blitz 2 object formats.

Example:

```

;
; object addr program example
;

Screen 0,3
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$100f,"My Window!",1,2
NPrint "Window object 0 resides at:",Addr Window(0)
NPrint "Intuition Window structure is at:",Peek.l(Addr Window(0))

MouseWait

```

Function: **Maximum**

Syntax: **Maximum Objectname**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Maximum** function allows a program to determine the 'maximum' setting for a particular Blitz 2 object. Maximum settings are entered into the 'OPTIONS' requester, accessed through the 'COMPILER' menu of the Blitz 2 editor.

Example:

```

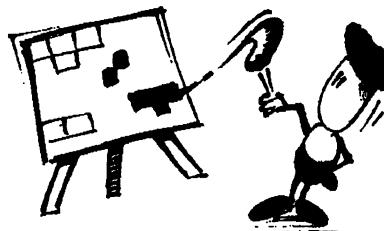
;
; maximum program example
;

NPrint "Maximum Windows available:",Maximum Window
MouseWait

```

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

13. BitMaps



Blitz 2 BitMap objects are used primarily for the purpose of rendering graphics. Most commands in Blitz 2 for generating graphics (excluding the Window and Sprite commands) depend upon a currently used BitMap.

BitMap objects may be created in one of two ways. A BitMap may be created by using the **BitMap** command, or a BitMap may be 'borrowed' from a Screen using the **ScreensBitMap** command.

BitMaps have three main properties. They have a width, a height and a depth. If a BitMap is created using the **ScreensBitMap** command, these properties are taken from the dimensions of the Screen. If a BitMap is created using the **BitMap** command, these properties must be specified.

Statement: BitMap

Syntax: **BitMap** *BitMap#*,*Width*,*Height*,*Depth*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

BitMap creates and initializes a bitmap object. Once created, the specified bitmap becomes the currently used bitmap. *Width* and *Height* specify the size of the bitmap. *Depth* specifies how many colours may be drawn onto the bitmap, and may be in the range one through six. The actual colours available on a bitmap can be calculated using 2^{depth} . For example, a bitmap of depth three allows for 2^3 or eight colours.

Example:

```

;
; a bitmap program example
;
BitMap 0,320,200,3 ;A standard lo-res, 8 colour BitMap, Now
;currently used
Circlef 160,100,50,3 ;draw something onto the used BitMap
Screen 0,0,0,320,200,3,0,"My Screen",1,2,0 ;Attach BitMap to Screen
MouseWait
End

```

See Also:

Use BitMap, Free BitMap

Statement: Use BitMap

Syntax: **Use BitMap** *BitMap#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Use BitMap defines the specified bitmap object as being the currently used BitMap. This is necessary for commands, such as **Blit**, which require the presence of a currently used BitMap.

See Also:

BitMap, Free BitMap

Statement: Free BitMap

Syntax: **Free BitMap** *BitMap#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Free BitMap erases all information connected to the specified bitmap. Any memory occupied by the bitmap is also deallocated. Once free'd, a bitmap may no longer be used.

See Also:

BitMap, Use BitMap

Statement: CopyBitMap

Syntax: **CopyBitMap** *BitMap#,BitMap#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

CopyBitMap will make an exact copy of a bitmap object into another bitmap object. The first *BitMap#* parameter specifies the source bitmap for the copy, the second *BitMap#* the destination.

Any graphics rendered onto the source bitmap will also be copied.

Statement: ScreensBitMap

Syntax: **ScreensBitMap** *Screen#,BitMap#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Blitz 2 allows you the option of attaching a bitmap object to any Intuition Screens you open. If you open a Screen without attaching a bitmap, a bitmap will be created anyway. You may then find this bitmap using the **ScreensBitMap** command. Once **ScreensBitMap** is executed, the specified bitmap becomes the currently used bitmap.

Example:

```

;
; using a screen's bitmap program example
;
Screen 0,3,"My Screen"      ;A Simple Screen.
ScreensBitMap 0,0          ;pick up it's BitMap...
Circlef 160,100,50,3
MouseWait
End
```

See Also:

Screen

Statement: LoadBitMap

Syntax: **LoadBitMap** *BitMap#*,*Filename\$*[,*Palette#*]

Modes: Amiga

Description:

LoadBitMap allows you to load an ILBM IFF graphic into a previously initialized bitmap object. You may optionally load in the graphics's colour palette into a palette object specified by *Palette#*. An error will be generated if the specified *Filename\$* is not in the correct IFF format.

Example:

```

;
; loadbitmap from disk and display program example
;
Screen 0,3,"My Screen"
ScreensBitMap 0,0
LoadBitMap 0,"MyPic.iff",0
Use Palette 0
MouseWait
End
```

Statement: SaveBitMap

Syntax: **SaveBitMap** *BitMap#*,*Filename\$*[,*Palette#*]

Modes: Amiga

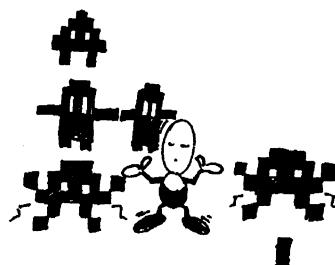
Description:

SaveBitMap allows you to save a bitmap to disk in ILBM IFF format. An optional palette may also be saved with the IFF.

Example:

```
; saving a bitmap to disk program example
;
Screen 0,3,"My Screen"
ScreensBitMap 0,0
Circlef 160,100,50,3
SaveBitmap 0,"MyBitMap.iff"      ;create an IFF!
End
```

14. Shapes



Shape objects are used for the purpose of storing graphic images. These images may be used in a variety of ways. For example, a shape may be used as the graphics for a gadget, or as the graphics for a menu item.

Many commands are available for the purpose of drawing shapes onto a bitmap. These commands use the Amiga's blitter chip to achieve this, and are therefore very fast. The process of putting a shape onto a bitmap using the blitter is often referred to as 'blitting' a shape. The speed at which a shape is blitted is important when you are writing animations routines, as the smoothness of any animation will be directly affected by how long it takes to draw the shapes involved in the animation.

There are 2 main factors which affect the speed at which a shape is blitted - it's size, and the technique used to actually blit the shape. Let's have a look at how the size of a shape affects it's 'blit speed'.

Obviously, larger shapes take longer to blit than smaller shapes. Not so obviously, shapes with more colours in them take longer to blit than shapes with fewer colours. A 2 bitplane (4 colour) shape will take twice as long to blit as a 1 bitplane (2 colour) shape. A 3 bitplane (8 colour) shape will take three times as long to blit as a 1 bitplane shape and so on.

The technique used to blit a shape also affects it's speed. The fastest blitting command you can use is the simple **Blit** command. However, this provides no way of erasing of shapes to allow for movement. **QBlit** is the fastest way to achieve this. **BBlit** is the slowest of the blit commands, but also the most versatile and least memory intensive.

One of a programmers most difficult tasks is that of achieving acceptable compromises. This is especially true in the case of blitting shapes. While it certainly would be nice to have 50 individual 64 colour shapes flying smoothly around the screen, the Amiga is not really up to it. Therefore, the programmer must decide on an acceptable compromise - Should less shapes be used? Maybe less colours? A combination of both? The answer will depend on what you as a programmer decide is best in the situation.

Statement: LoadShape

Syntax: **LoadShape** *Shape#*,*Filename\$*[,*Palette#*]

Modes: Amiga

Description:

LoadShape allows you to load an ILBM IFF file into a shape object. The optional *Palette#* parameter lets you also load the colour information contained in the file into a palette object.

Example:

```
;  
; simple blit shape example  
;
```

```
Screen 0,3           ;open an intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0     ;get its bitmap
LoadShape 0,"MyShape.iff",0 ;load a shape from disk
!Use Palette 0        ;use its palette
Blit 0,0,0            ;blit it onto the screen
MouseWait
```

See Also:

LoadShapes, SaveShape, SaveShapes

Statement: SaveShape

Syntax: **SaveShape Shape#,Filename\$,Palette#**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

SaveShape will create an ILBM IFF file based on the specified shape object. If you want the file to contain colour information, you should also specify a palette object using the *Palette#* parameter.

See Also:

SaveShapes, LoadShape, LoadShapes

Statement: LoadShapes

Syntax: **LoadShapes Shape#[,Shape#],Filename\$**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

LoadShapes lets you load a 'range' of shapes from disk into a series of shape objects. The file specified by *Filename\$* should have been created using the **SaveShapes** command.

The first *Shape#* parameter specifies the number of the first shape object to be loaded. Further shapes will be loaded into increasingly higher shape objects.

If a second *Shape#* parameter is supplied, then only shapes up to and including the second *Shape#* value will be loaded. If there are not enough shapes in the file to fill this range, any excess shapes will remain untouched.

See Also:

SaveShapes, LoadShape, LoadShapes

Statement: SaveShapes

Syntax: **SaveShapes** *Shape#*,*Shape#*,*Filename\$*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

SaveShapes allows you to create a file containing a range of shape objects. This file may be later loaded using the **LoadShapes** command.

The range of shapes to be saved is specified by *Shape#*,*Shape#*, where the first *Shape#* refers to the lowest shape to be saved and the second *Shape#* the highest.

See Also:

LoadShapes, **LoadShape**, **SaveShape**

Statement: GetaShape

Syntax: **GetaShape** *Shape#*,*X*,*Y*,*Width*,*Height*

Modes: Blitz/Amiga

Description:

GetaShape lets you transfer a rectangular area of the currently used bitmap into the specified shape object. *X*, *Y*, *Width* and *Height* specify the area of the bitmap to be picked up and used as a shape.

Example:

```

; getashape and randomly blit it example
;
Screen 0,3          ;an intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0     ;pick up it's bitmap
Cls                 ;clear bitmap
Boxf 10,10,29,29,2   ;draw some stuff for a shape
Box 12,12,27,27,3
Circlef 20,20,5,4
GetaShape 0,10,10,20,20 ;pick shape 0 up off bitmap
Cls                 ;clear bitmap again

For k=1 To 100        ;start of loop
  Blit 0,Rnd(160)+80,Rnd(100)+50 ;blit shape 0 at random position
Next                 ;end of loop

MouseWait

```

Statement: CopyShape

Syntax: **CopyShape Shape#,Shape#**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

CopyShape will produce an exact copy of one shape object in another shape object. The first *Shape#* specifies the source shape for the copy, the second specifies the destination shape.

CopyShape is often used when you require two copies of a shape in order to manipulate (using, for example, **XFlip**) one of them.

Statement: AutoCookie

Syntax: **AutoCookie On|Off**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

When shapes objects are used by any of the blitting routines (for example, **Blit**), they usually require the presence of what is known as a 'cookiecut'. These cookiecuts are used for internal purposes by the various blitting commands, and in no way affect the appearance or properties of a shape. They do, however, consume some of your valuable Chip memory.

When a shape is created (for example, by using **LoadShape** or **GetaShape**), a cookiecut is automatically made for it. However, this feature may be turned off by executing an **AutoCookie Off**. This is a good idea if you are not going to be using shapes for blitting - for example, shapes used for gadgets or menus.

See Also:

MakeCookie

Statement: MakeCookie

Syntax: **MakeCookie Shape#**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

MakeCookie allows you to create a 'cookiecut' for an individual shape. Cookiecuts are necessary for shapes which are to be used by the various blitting commands (for example, **QBlit**), and are normally made automatically whenever a shape is created (for example, using **LoadShape**). However, use of the **AutoCookie** command may mean you end up with a shape which has no cookiecut, but which you wish to blit at some stage. You can then use **MakeCookie** to make a cookiecut for this shape.

See Also:

AutoCookie

Function: ShapeWidth

Syntax: **ShapeWidth** (*Shape#*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **ShapeWidth** function returns the width, in pixels, of a previously created shape object.

See Also:

ShapeHeight

Function: ShapeHeight

Syntax: **ShapeHeight** (*Shape#*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **ShapeHeight** function returns the height, in pixels, of a previously created shape object.

See Also:

ShapeWidth

Statement: Handle

Syntax: **Handle** *Shape#,X,Y*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

All shapes have an associated 'handle'. A shape's handle refers to an offset from the upper left of the shape to be used when calculating a shapes position when it gets blitted to a bitmap. This is also often referred to as a 'hot spot'.

The *X* parameter specifies the 'acrosswards' offset for a handle, the *Y* parameter specifies a 'downwards' offset.

Let's have a look at an example of how a handle works. Assume you have set a shapes *X* handle to 5, and it's *Y* handle to 10. Now let's say we blit the shape onto a bitmap at pixel position 160,100. The handle will cause the upper left corner of the shape to actually end up at 155,90, while the point within the shape at 5,10 will end up at 160,100.

When a shape is created, it's handle is automatically set to 0,0 - it's upper left corner.

See Also:

MidHandle

Statement: MidHandle

Syntax: **MidHandle Shape#**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

MidHandle will cause the handle of the specified shape to be set to it's centre.
For example, these two commands achieve exactly the same result:

```
MidHandle 0  
Handle 0.ShapeWidth(0)/2,ShapeHeight(0)/2
```

For more information on handles, please refer to the **Handle** command.

See Also:

Handle

Statement: XFlip

Syntax: **XFlip Shape#**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **XFlip** command is one of Blitz 2's powerful shape manipulation commands. **XFlip** will horizontally 'mirror' a shape object, causing the object to be 'turned back to front'.

Example:

```
;  
; xflip example  
;  
Screen 0,3           ;an intuition screen  
ScreensBitMap 0,0     ;it's bitmap  
Cls                 ;clear it  
Circlef 32,32,32,3   ;draw...  
Boxf 32,0,63,63,2    ;some weird shape  
GetShape 0,0,0,64,64  ;pick it up off bitmap  
Cls                 ;clear bitmap again  
CopyShape 0,1          ;make a copy of shape  
XFlip 1              ;x flip copy  
Blit 0,0,0            ;show original  
Blit 1,0,100          ;show flipped copy  
MouseWait
```

See Also:

YFlip

Statement: YFlip

Syntax: **YFlip Shape#**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **YFlip** command may be used to vertically 'mirror' a shape object. The resultant shape will appear to have been 'turned upside down'.

Example:

```

;
; yflip example
;
Screen 0,3           ;open an intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0    ;borrow it's bitmap
Cls                  ;clear the bitmap
Circlef 32,32,32,3   ;draw some...
Boxf 0,32,63,63,2    ;weird shape
GetShape 0,0,0,64,64  ;pick shape 0 up from bitmap
Cls                  ;clear bitmap
CopyShape 0,1        ;make copy of shape
YFlip 1              ;Y Flip the copy
Blit 0,0,0            ;show original
Blit 1,160,0          ;show flipped copy
MouseWait

```

See Also:

XFlip

Statement: Scale

Syntax: **Scale Shape#, X Ratio, Y Ratio[, Palette#]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Scale is a very powerful command which may be used to 'stretch' or 'shrink' shape objects. The *Ratio* parameters specify how much stretching or shrinking to perform. A *Ratio* greater than one will cause the shape to be stretched (enlarged), while a *Ratio* of less than one will cause the shape to be shrunk (reduced). A *Ratio* of exactly one will cause no change in the shape's relevant dimension.

As there are separate *Ratio* parameters for both x and y, a shape may be stretched along one axis and shrunk along the other!

The optional *Palette#* parameter allows you to specify a palette object for use in the scaling operation. If a *Palette#* is supplied, the scale command will use a 'brightest pixel' method of shrinking. This means a shape may be shrunk to a small size without detail being lost.

Example:

```
; scale shape example
;
Screen 0,3           ;An intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0    ;the screens bitmap
ClS                  ;clear the bitmap
For k=7 To 1 Step -1 ;a loop to generate some
Circlef 32,32,k*4,k   ;kind of shape
Next
GetShape 0,0,0,64,64 ;pick up the shape

For k=1 To 6      ;start of loop
CopyShape 0,k        ;copy shape
Scale k,k/4,k/4     ;resize it
Next                ;end of loop

ClS

For k=1 To 6      ;start of loop
Blit k,k*32,0       ;show shapes we just generated
Next                ;end of loop

MouseWait
```

See also:

Rotate

Statement: **Rotate**

Syntax: **Rotate Shape#,Angle Ratio**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Rotate** command allows you to rotate a shape object. *Angle Ratio* specifies how much clockwise rotation to apply, and should be in the range zero to one. For instance, an *Angle Ratio* of .5 will cause a shape to be rotated 180 degrees, while an *Angle Ratio* of .25 will cause a shape to be rotated 90 degrees clockwise.

Example:

```
; rotate shape example with qblit for smooth spinning
;
Screen 0,1
ScreensBitMap 0,0      ;grab it's bitmap
BitMapOutput 0         ;use bitmap for 'Print' commands
Queue 0,1               ;set up a Queue for the QBlit...
ClS                    ;clear the bitmap
Boxf 0,0,15,63,1        ;draw a rectangle
GetShape 0,0,0,16,64    ;grab it as a shape
```

```
Cls           ;clear bitmap
Print "Please Wait"

For k=1 To 64      ;start of loop
  CopyShape 0,k    ;make 64 copies of original shape!
  Rotate k,k/64    ;rotate each copy a little more than last
  MidHandle k      ;and handle in the middle
  Print ":"        ;tell user we're doin the job
Next             ;end of copy loop

Cls           ;clear bitmap

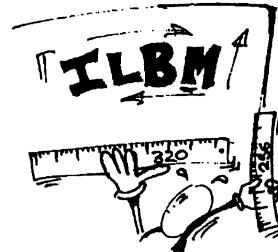
While Joyb(0)=0   ;while joystick button not down...
  For k=1 To 64    ;show all shapes
    VWait          ;wait for top of frame
    UnQueue 0       ;clear the Queue
    QBlit 0,k,160,100 ;Draw next shape
  Next
Wend
```

See Also:

Scale

BLIZZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

15. ILBM



ILBM stands for InterLeaved BitMap. This refers to a format many art packages use to store image files in. Electronic Art's excellent DPaint, for example, uses the ILBM format to save its picture and brush files.

Blitz 2 supplies various commands to examine the attributes of ILBM files.

Statement: **ILBMDInfo**

Syntax: **ILBMDInfo** *Filename\$*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

ILBMDInfo is used to examine an ILBM file. Once **ILBMDInfo** has been executed, **ILBMWidth**, **ILBMHeight** and **ILBMDepth** may be used to examine properties of the image contained in the file.

Function: **ILBMWidth**

Syntax: **ILBMWidth**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

ILBMWidth will return the width, in pixels, of an ILBM image examined with **ILBMDInfo**.

Function: **ILBMHeight**

Syntax: **ILBMHeight**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

ILBMHeight will return the height, in pixels, of an ILBM image examined with **ILBMDInfo**.

Statement: **ILBMDepth**

Syntax: **ILBMDepth**

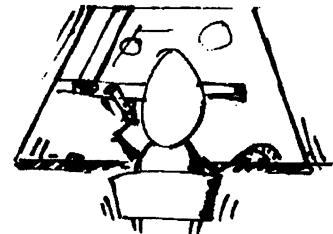
Modes: Amiga

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

Description:

ILBMDepth will return the depth, in bitplanes, of an ILBM image examined with **ILBMInfo**.

16. 2D Drawing



This section covers all commands related to rendering arbitrary graphics to bitmaps.

All commands perform clipping - that is, they all allow you to draw 'outside' the edges of bitmaps.

Statement: **ClS**

Syntax: **ClS** [*Colour*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ClS allows you to fill the currently used bitmap with the colour specified by the *Colour* parameter. If *Colour* is omitted, the currently used bitmap will be filled with colour 0. A *Colour* parameter of -1 will cause the entire bitmap to be 'inverted'.

Example:

```

;
; simple cls example
;
Screen 0,3          ;open an intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0     ;use it's bitmap
ClS 2                ;fill bitmap with colour 2
MouseWait

```

Statement: **Plot**

Syntax: **Plot** *X,Y,Colour*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Plot is used to alter the colour of an individual pixel on the currently used bitmap. *X* and *Y* specify the location of the pixel to be altered, and *Colour* specifies the colour to change the pixel to.

A *Colour* parameter of -1 will cause the pixel at the specified pixel position to be 'inverted'.

Example:

```

;
; simple plot example
;
Screen 0,3          ;an intuition screen

```

ScreensBitMap 0,0 ;the screen's bitmap

```
For x=0 To 319                         ;start of loop  
  Plot x,100,3                         ;what a boring plot!  
  Next                                    ;end of loop
```

MouseWait

See Also:

Point

Function: Point

Syntax: **Point** (*X, Y*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Point** function will return the colour of a particular pixel in the currently used bitmap. The pixel to be examined is specified by the *X* and *Y* parameters.

If *X* and *Y* specify a point outside the edges of the bitmap, a value of -1 will be returned.

Example:

```
; point example  
  
Screen 0,3,"HELLO THERE"                 ;intuition screen...  
ScreensBitMap 0,0                            ;and bitmap of screen  
  
For y=0 To 9                                 ;one loop...  
  For x=0 To 47                              ;another  
    Plot x,y,7-Point(x,y)                  ;calc inverse colour for plot  
  Next                                         ;end of x loop  
Next                                            ;end of y loop
```

MouseWait

See Also:

Plot

Statement: Line

Syntax: **Line** [*X1, Y1, X2, Y2, Colour*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Line** command draws a line connecting two pixels onto the currently used bitmap. The *X* and *Y*

parameters specify the pixels to be joined, and *Colour* specifies the colour to draw the line in.

If *X1* and *Y1* are omitted, the end points (*X2*,*Y2*) of the last line drawn will be used.

A *Colour* parameter of -1 will cause an 'inverted' line to be drawn.

Example:

```
;
; line example
;
Screen 0,3           ;an intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0     ;it's bitmap

For k=1 To 100          ;start of loop...
  Line Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(7)+1 ;random lines!
Next                   ;end of loop
```

Statement: Box

Syntax: Box *X1*,*Y1*,*X2*,*Y2*,*Colour*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Box** command draw a rectangular outline onto the currently used bitmap. *X1*, *Y1*, *X2* and *Y2* specify two corners of the box to be drawn. *Colour* refers to the colour to draw the box in.

A *Colour* parameter of -1 will cause an 'inverted' box to be drawn.

Example:

```
;
; simple box example
;
Screen 0,3           ;intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0     ;it's bitmap

For k=1 To 100          ;start of loop...
  Box Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(7)+1 ;random boxes
Next                   ;end of loop
```

MouseWait

See Also:

Boxf

Statement: Boxf

Syntax: Boxf *X1*,*Y1*,*X2*,*Y2*,*Colour*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Boxf draws a solid rectangular shape on the currently used bitmap. X1,Y1,X2 and Y2 refer to two corners of the box. *Colour* specifies the colour to draw the box in.

A *Colour* parameter of -1 will cause the rectangular area to be 'inverted'.

Example:

```
;  
; boxf example  
;  
Screen 0,3,"Hello There"      ;an intuition screen  
ScreensBitMap 0,0           ;bitmap of the screen  
Boxf 0,0,47,9,-1            ;an inversed box  
MouseWait
```

See Also:

Box

Statement: Circle

Syntax: **Circle** *X,Y,Radius[,Y Radius],Colour*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Circle will draw an open circle onto the currently used bitmap. *X* and *Y* specify the mid point of the circle. The *Radius* parameter specifies the radius of the circle. If a *Y Radius* parameter is supplied, then an ellipse may be drawn.

A *Colour* parameter of -1 will cause an 'inverted' circle to be drawn.

Example:

```
;  
; circle example  
;  
Screen 0,3                  ;an intuition screen  
ScreensBitMap 0,0           ;bitmap of screen  
  
For k=1 To 10             ;start of loop  
  Circle Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(100),Rnd(7)+1 ;random circles  
Next                      ;end of loop  
  
MouseWait
```

Statement: Circlef

Syntax: **Circlef X,Y,Radius[,Y Radius],Colour**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Circlef will draw a filled circle onto the currently used bitmap. *X* and *Y* specify the mid point of the circle - *Colour*, the colour in which to draw the circle. The *Radius* parameter specifies the radius of the circle. If a *Y Radius* parameter is supplied, then an ellipse may be drawn.

A *Colour* parameter of -1 will cause an 'inverted' circle to be drawn.

Example:

```

;
; circlef example
;
Screen 0,3           ;an intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0

For k=1 To 10          ;start of loop
  Circlef Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(100),Rnd(7)+1 ;random circles
Next                   ;end of loop

MouseWait

```

Statement: Scroll

Syntax: **Scroll X1,Y1,Width,Height,X2,Y2[,Source BitMap]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Scroll allows rectangular areas within a bitmap to be moved around. *X1*, *Y1*, *Width* and *Height* specify the position and size of the rectangle to be moved. *X2* and *Y2* specify the position the rectangle is to be moved to.

An optional *Source BitMap* parameter allows you to move rectangular areas from one bitmap to another.

Example:

```

;
; scroll example
;
Screen 0,3,"YEEEEHHHHAAAAAA!" ;an intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0               ;it's bitmap

For k=16 To 192 Step 16        ;start of loop
  Scroll 0,0,320,10,0,k       ;move title bar!
Next                          ;end of loop
MouseWait

```

Statement: FloodFill

Syntax: **FloodFill X,Y,Colour [,Border Colour]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

FloodFill will 'colour in' a region of the screen starting at the coordinates X,Y.

The first mode will fill all the region that is currently the colour at the coordinates X,Y with the colour specified by Colour.

The second mode will fill a region starting at X,Y and surrounded by the BorderColour with Colour.

Statement: FreeFill

Syntax: **FreeFill**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

FreeFill will deallocate the memory that Blitz 2 uses to execute the commands **Circlef**, **FloodFill**, **ReMap** and **Boxf**.

Blitz 2 uses a single monochrome bitmap the size of the bitmap being drawn to do its filled routines, by using the FreeFill command this BitMap can be 'freed' up if no more filled commands are to be executed.

CHAPTER 16 DRAWING

ELIOT BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

17. Palettes, Fades and Cycling



Palette objects are temporary storage areas of RGB and colour cycling information. This information is normally taken from an ILBM IFF file.

Blitz 2 supports colour cycling.

Blitz 2 also supports the ability to 'fade in' or 'fade out' colour palettes in Blitz mode.

Statement: LoadPalette

Syntax: **LoadPalette** *Palette#*,*Filename\$*[,*Palette Offset*]

Modes: Amiga

Description:

LoadPalette creates and initializes a palette object. *Filename\$* specifies the name of an ILBM IFF file containing colour information. If the file contains colour cycling information, this will also be loaded into the palette object.

An optional *Palette Offset* may be specified to allow the colour information to be loaded at a specified point (colour register) in the palette. This is especially useful in the case of sprite colours, as these must begin at colour register sixteen.

LoadPalette does not actually change any display colours. Once a palette is loaded, **Use Palette** can be used to cause display changes.

Example:

```
;
; palette program example
;
Screen 0,3           ;open a simple, 8 colour screen
LoadScreen 0,"picture.iff" ;load a picture into the screen
LoadPalette 0,"picture.iff" ;load pictures colours
Use Palette 0          ;display the colours.
MouseWait
End
```

Statement: Use Palette

Syntax: **Use Palette** *Palette#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Use Palette transfers palette information from a palette object to a displayable palette. If executed in Amiga mode, palette information is transferred into the palette of the currently used Screen. If executed in Blitz mode, palette information is transferred into the palette of the currently used Slice.

Example:

```
; loadscreen program example with palette
;
Screen 0,3          ;open a simple, 8 colour screen
LoadScreen 0,"picture.iff",0 ;load a picture into the screen, and palette as well
Use Palette 0        ;display the colours.
MouseWait
End
```

Statement: Free Palette

Syntax: **Free Palette** *Palette#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Free Palette erases all information in a palette object. That Palette object may no longer be **Used** or **Cycled**.

See Also:

Use Palette, **LoadPalette**

Statement: PalRGB

Syntax: **PalRGB** *Palette#*,*Colour Register*,*Red*,*Green*,*Blue*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

PalRGB allows you to set an individual colour register within a palette object. Unless an **RGB** has also been executed, the actual colour change will not come into effect until the next time **Use Palette** is executed.

Example:

```
; setting up a palette program example
;
PalRGB 0,0,6,6,6
PalRGB 0,1,15,15,15
PalRGB 0,2,0,0,0
```

```

PalRGB 0,3,15,15,0
Screen 0,3,"A Manually created palette object!"
Use Palette 0
MouseWait

```

See Also:

Use Palette, RGB, LoadPalette

Statement: SetCycle

Syntax: **SetCycle** *Palette#*,*Cycle*,*Low Colour*,*High Colour* [*Speed*]

Modes: Amiga

Description:

SetCycle is used to configure colour cycling information for the **Cycle** command. The *low* and *high colours* specify the range of colours that will cycle. You may have a maximum of 7 different cycles for a single palette. The optional parameter *Speed* specifies how quickly the colours will cycle, a negative value will cycle the colours backwards.

Statement: Cycle

Syntax: **Cycle** *Palette#*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Cycle will cause the colour cycling information contained in the specified palette to be cycled on the currently used Screen. Colour cycling information is created when **LoadPalette** is executed or with the **SetCycle** command.

Example:

```

;
; loading a palette and cycling colours program example
;
Screen 0,3           ;open a simple, 8 colour screen
LoadScreen 0,"picture.iff" ;load a picture into the screen
LoadPalette 0,"picture.iff" ;load pictures colours
Use Palette 0          ;display the colours.
Cycle 0
MouseWait
End

```

See Also:

LoadPalette, SetCycle, StopCycle

Statement: StopCycle

Syntax: StopCycle

Modes: Amiga

Description:

StopCycle will halt all colour cycling started with the **Cycle** command.

Statement: Rgb

Syntax: **Rgb** Colour Register,Red,Green,Blue

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Rgb enables you to set individual colour registers in a palette to an RGB colour value. If executed in Amiga mode, **Rgb** sets colour registers in the currently used screen. If executed in Blitz Mode, **Rgb** sets colour registers in the currently used slice. Note that **Rgb** does not alter palette objects in any way.

Example:

```
; : setting a palette colour program example
;
Screen 0,3      ;open up an Intuition Screen
RGB 0,15,0,0    ;this will set background colour to red
MouseWait
```

See Also:

PalRGB, **Red**, **Green**, **Blue**

Function: Red

Syntax: **Red** (Colour Register)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Red returns the amount of RGB red in a specified colour register. If executed in Amiga mode, **Red** returns the amount of red in the specified colour register of the currently used screen. If executed in Blitz mode, **Red** returns the amount of red in the specified colour register of the currently used slice.

Red will always return a value in the range zero to fifteen.

Example:

```
; red() function program example
;
Screen 0,3
ScreensBitMap 0,0
BitMapOutput 0
RGB 0,8,4,2
NPrint "Red of colour 0 = ";Red(0)
MouseWait
End
```

See Also:

Green, Blue, RGB

Function: Green

Syntax: **Green** (*Colour Register*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Green returns the amount of RGB green in a specified colour register. If executed in Amiga mode, **Green** returns the amount of green in the specified colour register of the currently used screen. If executed in Blitz mode, **Green** returns the amount of green in the specified colour register of the currently used slice.

Green will always return a value in the range zero to fifteen.

Example:

```
; green() program example
;
Screen 0,3
ScreensBitMap 0,0
BitMapOutput 0
RGB 0,8,4,2
NPrint "Green of colour 0 = ";Green(0)
MouseWait
End
```

See Also:

Red, Blue, RGB

Function: Blue

Syntax: **Blue** (*Colour Register*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Blue returns the amount of RGB blue in a specified colour register. If executed in Amiga mode, **Blue** returns the amount of blue in the specified colour register of the currently used screen. If executed in Blitz mode, **Blue** returns the amount of blue in the specified colour register of the currently used slice.

Blue will always return a value in the range zero to fifteen.

Example:

```
; blue() program example
;
Screen 0.3
ScreensBitMap 0.0
BitMapOutput 0
RGB 0.8,4.2
NPrint "Blue of colour 0 = ";Blue(0)
MouseWait
```

See Also:

Red, **Green**, **RGB**

Statement: **FadeIn**

Syntax: **FadeIn** *Palette#*[, *Rate#*[, *Low Colour*, *High Colour*]]

Modes: Blitz

Description:

Fadein will cause the colour palette of the currently used slice to be 'faded in' from black up to the RGB values contained in the specified *Palette#*.

Rate# allows you to control the speed of the fade, with 0 being the fastest fade.

Low Colour and *High Colour* allow you to control which colour palette registers are affected by the fade.

Example:

```
;
; fadein example
;
For k=1 To 15      ;set up our own palette object...
  PalRGB 0,k,k,0,15-k
Next
BitMap 0,320,200,4  ;set up a 16 colour bitmap
For k=1 To 100     ;draw 100 random circles
```

Circlef Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(40),Rnd(15)+1
Next

BLITZ :go into blitz mode
Slice 0,44,320,200,\$fff8,4,8,32,320,320 ;a simple slice

For k=0 To 15 ;set all RGBs in slice to black
RGB k,0,0,0
Next

Show 0 ;show bitmap
VWait 50 ;pause for effect
FadeIn 0,1 ;fade in palette# 0 at a rate of 1
MouseWait

See Also:

FadeOut

Statement: **FadeOut**

Syntax: **FadeOut Palette#[,Rate[,Low Colour, High Colour]]**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

Fadeout will cause the colour palette of the currently used slice to be 'faded out' from the RGB values contained in the specified *Palette#* down to black.

Rate# allows you to control the speed of the fade, with 0 being the fastest fade.

Low Colour and *High Colour* allow you to control which colour palette registers are affected by the fade.

For **FadeOut** to work properly, the RGB values in the currently used slice should be set to the specified *Palette#* prior to using **FadeOut**.

See Also:

Fadein

Statement: **ASyncFade**

Syntax: **ASyncFade On/ Off**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ASyncFade allows you control over how the **FadeIn** and **FadeOut** commands work. Normally, **FadeIn** and **FadeOut** will halt program flow, execute the entire fade, and then continue program flow. This is **ASyncFade Off** mode.

ASyncFade On will cause **FadeIn** and **FadeOut** to work differently. Instead of performing the whole fade at once, the programmer must execute the **DoFade** command to perform the next step of the fade. This allows fading to occur in parallel with program flow.

See Also:

DoFade, FadeStatus

Statement: **DoFade**

Syntax: **DoFade**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

DoFade will cause the next step of a fade to be executed. **ASyncFade On**, and a **FadeIn** or **FadeOut** must be executed prior to calling **DoFade**.

The **FadeStatus** function may be used to determine whether there are any steps of fading left to perform.

See Also:

ASyncFade, FadeStatus

Function: **FadeStatus**

Syntax: **FadeStatus**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

FadeStatus is used in conjunction with the **DoFade** command to determine if any steps of fading have yet to be performed. If a fade process has not entirely finished yet (ie: more **DoFades** are required), then **FadeStatus** will return true (-1). If not, **FadeStatus** will return false (0). Please refer to **ASyncFade** and **DoFade** for more information.

See Also:

ASyncFade, FadeIn, FadeOut, DoFade

18. Sound



Sound objects are used to store audio information. This information can be taken from an 8SVX IFF file using **LoadSound**, or defined by hand through a BASIC routine using **InitSound** and **SoundData**. Once a sound is created, it may be later played back.

Statement: LoadSound

Syntax: **LoadSound** *Sound#*,*Filename\$*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

LoadSound creates a sound object for later playback. The sound is taken from an 8SVX IFF file. An error will be generated if the specified file is not in the correct IFF format.

Example:

```
; ; a sound program example
;
LoadSound 0,"Zap.iff"
Sound 0,1
MouseWait
End
```

See Also:

Sound

Statement: Sound

Syntax: **Sound** *Sound#*,*Channelmask*[,*Vol1*[,*Vol2*...]]

Description:

Sound causes a previously created sound object to be played through the Amiga's audio hardware. *Channelmask* specifies which of the Amiga's four audio channels the sound should be played through, and should be in the range one through fifteen.

The following is a list of *Channelmask* values and their effect:

ChannelMask	Channel 0	Channel 1	Channel 2	Channel 3
1	on	off	off	off
2	off	on	off	off
3	on	on	off	off
4	off	off	on	off
5	on	off	on	off
6	off	on	on	off
7	on	on	on	off
8	off	off	off	on
9	on	off	off	on
10	off	on	off	on
11	on	on	off	on
12	off	off	on	on
13	on	off	on	on
14	off	on	on	on
15	on	on	on	on

In the above table, any audio channels specified as 'off' are not altered by **Sound**, and any sounds they may have previously been playing will not be affected.

The *Volx* parameters allow individual volume settings for different audio channels. Volume settings must be in the range zero through 64, zero being silence, and 64 being loudest. The first *Vol* parameter specifies the volume for the lowest numbered 'on' audio channel, the second *Vol* for the next lowest and so on.

For example, assume you are using the following **Sound** command:

Sound 0,10,32,16

The *Channelmask* of ten means the sound will play through audio channels one and three. The first volume of 32 will be applied to channel one, and the second volume of 16 will be applied to channel three.

Any *Vol* parameters omitted will be cause a volume setting of 64.

Example:

```
; a very sound program example
;
LoadSound 0,"Mysound.iff"
Sound 0,15,8,16,32,64
MouseWait
End
```

See Also:

LoadSound

Statement: **LoopSound**

Syntax: **LoopSound Sound#,Channelmask[,Vol1[,Vol2...]]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

LoopSound behaves identically to **Sound**, only the sound will be played repeatedly. Looping a sound allows for the facility to play the entire sound just once, and begin repeating at a point in the sound other than the beginning. This information is picked up from the 8SVX IFF file, when **LoadSound** is used to create the sound, or from the *offset* parameter of **InitSound**.

Example:

```
;           ; loop sound program example
;
LoadSound 0,"MySound.off"      ;load sound and loop info.
LoopSound 0,15
MouseWait
```

Statement: Volume

Syntax: **Volume** *Channelmask*,*Vol1[,Vol2...]*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Volume allows you to dynamically alter the volume of an audio channel. This enables effects such as volume fades. For an explanation of *Channelmask* and *Vol* parameters, please refer to the **Sound** command.

Example:

```
;           ; sound fader program example
;
LoadSound 0,"MySound.iff"
Sound 0,1

For v=64 To 0 Step -16
  VWait          ;wait a frame
  Volume 1,v     ;set new volume
  Next

MouseWait
End
```

See Also:

Sound

Statement: InitSound

Syntax: **InitSound** *Sound#*,*Length[,Period[,Repeat]]*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

InitSound initializes a sound object in preparation for the creation of custom sound data. This allows simple sound waves such as sine or square waves to be algorithmically created. **SoundData** should be used to create the actual wave data.

Length refers to the length, in bytes, the sound object is required to be. *Length* MUST be less than 128K, and MUST be even.

Period allows you to specify a default pitch for the sound. A period of 428 will cause the sound to be played at approximately middle 'C'.

Offset is used in conjunction with **LoopSound**, and specifies a position in the sound at which repeating should begin. Please refer to **LoopSound** for more information on repeating sounds.

Example:

```
;           ; custom waveform program example
;
InitSound 0,32
co.f=Pi/32/2      ;to convert from radians to a '32 degree'
;system.

For k=0 To 31
  SoundData 0,k,Sin(k*co)*127
Next

LoopSound 0,15
MouseWait
```

See Also:

SoundData, **Sound**

Statement: **SoundData**

Syntax: **SoundData** *Sound#*,*Offset*,*Data*

Description:

SoundData allows you to manually specify the waveform of a sound object. The sound object should normally have been created using **InitSound**, although altering IFF sounds is perfectly legal.

SoundData alters one byte of sound data at the specified *Offset*. *Data* refers to the actual byte to place into the sound, and should be in the range -128 to +127.

Example:

```
;           ; make a square wave program example
;
InitSound 0,32      ;Get a sound object ready.
```

```

For k=0 To 31      ;Here, we will make a 'Square' waveform.
  If k<16
    SoundData 0,k,127
  Else
    SoundData 0,k,-128
  EndIf
Next

LoopSound 0,15      ;Play the sound.

```

MouseWait

See Also:

InitSound, Sound, LoopSound

Function: **PeekSound**

Syntax: **PeekData (Sound#,Offset)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

PeekSound returns the byte of a sample at the specified offset of the sound object specified.

See Also:

SoundData, InitSound

Statement: **DiskPlay**

Syntax: **DiskPlay Filename\$, Channelmask[, Vol1[, Vol2...]]**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

DiskPlay will play an 8SVX IFF sound file straight from disk. This is ideal for situations where you simply want to play a sample without the extra hassle of loading a sound, playing it, and then freeing it. The **DiskPlay** command will also halt program flow until the sample has finished playing.

DiskPlay usually requires much less memory to play a sample than the **LoadSound, Sound** technique. Also, **DiskPlay** allows you to play samples of any length, whereas **LoadSound** only allows samples up to 128K in length to be loaded.

For information on the *Channelmask* and *Vol* parameters, please refer to the **Sound** command

Example:

```
;  
; diskplay program example  
;  
DiskPlay "Introduction.iff",1,64
```

See Also:

DiskBuffer, **Sound**

Statement: DiskBuffer

Syntax: **DiskBuffer** *Bufferlen*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

DiskBuffer allows you to set the size of the memory buffer used by the **DiskPlay** command. This Buffer is by default set to 1024 bytes, and should not normally have to be set to more than this. Reducing the buffer size by too much may cause loss of sound quality of the **DiskPlay** command. If you are using **DiskPlay** to access a very slow device, the buffer size may have to be increased.

See Also:

DiskPlay

Statement: Filter

Syntax: **Filter** *On|Off*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Filter may be used to turn on or off the Amiga's low pass audio filter.

Example:

```
;  
; filter on program example  
;  
Filter On  
DiskPlay "MySound",1
```

Music Modules

The Soundtracker and Noisetracker format for creating sequenced music has become pretty much an Amiga standard. Blitz 2 supports commands for the loading and playing of songs ('modules') created using Soundtracker or Noisetracker compatible sequencer programs.

Blitz 2 uses module objects to keep track of different pieces of music, allowing you to have more than one module loaded at a time.

Statement: LoadModule

Syntax: **LoadModule** *Module#,Filename\$*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

LoadModule loads in from disk a soundtracker/noisetracker music module. This module may be later played back using **PlayModule**.

See Also:

PlayModule, **StopModule**

Statement: Free Module

Syntax: **Free Module** *Module#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Free Module may be used to delete a module object. Any memory occupied by the module will also be free'd.

See Also:

LoadModule

Statement: PlayModule

Syntax: **PlayModule** *Module#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

PlayModule will cause a previously loaded soundtracker/noisetracker song module to be played back.

See Also:

LoadModule, StopModule

Statement: StopModule

Syntax: StopModule

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

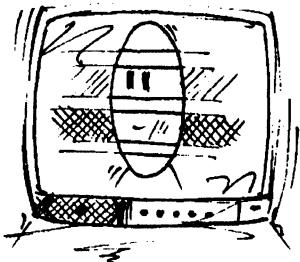
Description:

StopModule will cause any soundtracker/noisetracker modules which may be currently playing to stop.

See Also:

LoadModule, PlayModule

19. Slices



Slices are Blitz 2 objects which are the heart of Blitz mode's powerful graphics system. Through the use of slices, many weird and wonderful graphical effects can be achieved, effects not normally possible in Amiga mode. This includes such things as dual playfield displays, smooth scrolling, double buffering and more!

Blitz mode's main feature is it's flexible control over the Amiga's display. This control is achieved through the use of slices. A slice may be thought of as a 'description' of the appearance of a rectangular area of the Amiga's display. This description includes display mode, colour palette, sprite and bitplane information. More than one slice may be set up at a time, allowing different areas of the display to take on different properties.

There are some limits placed upon how multiple slices may be arranged:

- * Slices must not overlap in any way
- * Slices must not be positioned horizontally 'beside' each other. This means multiple slices must be positioned vertically 'on top of' each other.
- * When you specify an area for a slice, you only have control over the slices vertical position, it's width and it's height. A slice's horizontal starting position will be automatically calculated in a way which causes the slice to be horizontally centred based on it's width.
- * Slices normally require a gap of at least two horizontal lines between the bottom of one slice and the top of another, although there are some situations where this is not necessary.

Here is a simple example of setting up a basic slice driven Blitz mode display:

```

;           ;go into Blitz mode!
BLITZ      ;set up slice 0
Slice 0,44,3
MouseWait
;
```

We wont go too deeply into how the slice command actually works just now, but this example will set up a lo-res eight colour slice - 320 pixels across by either 200 or 256 pixels down, depending on whether you are using an NTSC or PAL machine.

If you type in and compile this example, you will notice that the display contains some fairly random graphics. This is because slices simply control *how* the display appears - they don't control *what* is actually to appear. To use slices to display graphics, a bitmap and some form of the **Show** command is required:

```

;           ;slice showing a bitmap program example
;
BLITZ      ;Go into Blitz mode!
BitMap 0,320,DispHeight,3 ;set up an 8 colour bitmap
Cls 2      ;fill bitmap with colour 2
Slice 0,44,3 ;set up a slice
Show 0      ;show bitmap 0 in the slice
MouseWait
;
```

Once the bitmap is initialized and **Shown** in this way, any bitmap related commands may be used to render graphics. Here is an example of the **Circlef** command at work in a slice:

```
;  
; a functional slice program example  
;  
BLITZ ;go into Blitz mode  
BitMap 0,320,DispHeight,3 ;set up an 8 colour bitmap  
Slice 0,44,3 ;set up a slice  
Show 0  
  
For k=1 To 100 ;draw 100 circles.  
    Circlef Rnd(320),Rnd(DispHeight),Rnd(10)+5,Rnd(7)+1  
Next
```

MouseWait

These examples are all very simple in nature, but illustrate the minimum necessary steps involved in putting single slices to work.

The form of the **Slice** command used in the above examples is a 'quick' form of the standard **Slice** command. Using **Slice** this way limits you to having just one slice active on the display at once. If you are wanting multiple slices, you must use the more complex **Slice** command.

Here's a quick example of multiple slices:

```
;  
; multi slice program example  
;  
BLITZ ;Blitz mode! Yeah!  
BitMap 0,320,100,3 ;make a bitmap  
Cls 2 ;fill it with colour 2  
BitMapOutput 0 ;we're going to print to it...  
Print "Hello - Slice Magic!" ;like so...  
Slice 0,44,160,100,$fff8,3,8,32,320,320 ;whew!  
RGB 1,15,15,15 ;this affects slice 0's palette  
RGB 2,8,0,15 ;so does this  
Show 0 ;show the bitmap  
Slice 1,146,320,100,$fff9,3,8,32,320,320 ;more whew!  
RGB 1,15,15,0 ;this affects slice 1's palette  
RGB 2,0,8,15 ;ditto  
Show 0 ;show the bitmap (same one!)  
MouseWait
```

Note that the text 'Hello - Slice Magic!' appears at two different places on the display, even though it was only printed once! This is because both slices are **Shown** the same bitmap, and it is on this bitmap that the text is rendered.

Also note that the top slice is in lo-res mode, whereas the bottom slice is in hi-res mode.

Finally, note that the positioning of the slices follows the rules outlined above. The slices are stacked vertically, and there is a two line gap between them.

One final important word about slices - slice objects can not be individually **Free'd**. This means once a slice is created - it's there for good. The only way to free up slices is to free the lot of them at once using the **FreeSlices** command.

Statement: Slice

Syntax: *Slice Slice#,Y,Flags*

Slice Slice#,Y,Width,Height,Flags,BitPlanes,Sprites,Colours,Width1,Width2

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Slice** command is used to create a Blitz 2 slice object. Slices are primarily of use in Blitz mode, allowing you to create highly customized displays.

In both forms of the **Slice** command, the *Y* parameter specifies the 'downwards' pixel position of the top of the slice. A *Y* value of 44 will position slices at about the top of the display.

In the first form of the **Slice** command, *Flags* refers to the number of bitplanes in any bitmaps (the bitmap's depth) to be shown in the slice. This form of the **Slice** command will normally create a lo-res slice, however this may be changed to a hi-res slice by adding eight to the *Flags* parameter. For instance, a *Flags* value of four will set up a lo-res, 4 bitplane (16 colour) slice, whereas a *Flags* value of ten will set up a hi-res, 2 bitplane (4 colour) slice. The width of a slice set up in this way will be 320 pixels for a lo-res slice, or 640 pixels for a hi-res slice. The height of a slice set up using this syntax will be 200 pixels on an NTSC Amiga, or 256 pixels on a PAL Amiga.

The second form of the **Slice** command is far more versatile, albeit a little more complex.

Width and *Height* allow you to use specific values for the slice's dimensions. These parameters are specified in pixel amounts.

BitPlanes refers to the depth of any bitmaps you will be showing in this slice.

Sprites refers to how many sprite channels should be available in this slice. Each slice may have up to eight sprite channels, allowing sprites to be 'multiplexed'. This is one way to overcome the Amiga's 'eight sprite limit'. It is recommended that the top-most slice be created with all eight sprite channels, as this will prevent sprite flicker caused by unused sprites.

Colours refers to how many colour palette entries should be available for this slice, and should not be greater than 32.

Width1 and *Width2* specify the width, in pixels, of any bitmaps to be shown in this slice. If a slice is set up to be a dual-playfield slice, *Width1* refers to the width of the 'foreground' bitmap, and *Width2* refers to the width of the 'background' bitmap. If a slice is NOT set up to be a dual-playfield slice, both *Width1* and *Width2* should be set to the same value. These parameters allow you to show bitmaps which are wider than the slice, introducing the ability to smooth scroll through large bitmaps.

The *Flags* parameter has been left to last because it is the most complex. *Flags* allows you control over many aspects of the slices appearance, and just what effect the slice has. Here are some example settings for *Flags*:

<i>Flags</i> setting	Effect	Max BitPlanes
\$fff8	A standard lo-res slice	6
\$fff9	A standard hi-res slice	4
\$fffa	A lo-res, dual-playfield slice	6
\$fffb	A hi-res, dual-playfield slice	4
\$fffc	A HAM slice	6 only

WARNING - the next bit is definitely for the more advanced users out there! Knowledge of the following is NOT necessary to make good use of slices.

Flags is actually a collection of individual bit-flags. The bit-flags control how the slices 'copper list' is created. Here is a list of the bits numbers and their effect:

Bit #	Effect
15	Create copper MOVE BPLCON0
14	Create copper MOVE BPLCON1
13	Create copper MOVE BPLCON2
12	Create copper MOVE DIWSTRT and MOVE DIWSTOP
10	Create copper MOVE DDFSTRT and MOVE DDFSTOP
8	Create copper MOVE BPL1MOD
7	Create copper MOVE BPL2MOD
4	Create a 2 line 'blank' above top of slice
3	Allow for smooth horizontal scrolling
2	HAM slice
1	Dual-playfield slice
0	Hi-res slice - default is lo-res

Clever selection of these bits allows you to create 'minimal' slices which may only affect specific system registers.

The *BitPlanes* parameter may also be modified to specify 'odd only' or 'even only' bitplanes. This is of use when using dual playfield displays, as it allowins you to create a mid display slice which may show a different foreground or background bitmap leaving the other intact. To specify creation of foreground bitplanes only, simply set bit 15 of the *BitPlanes* parameter. To specify creation of background bitplanes only, set bit 14 of the *BitPlanes* parameter.

Example:

```
; slice with circle program example
;
;BLITZ                      ;Goodbye OS!
;BitMap 0,320,200,3          ;make a bitmap
;Circlef 160,100,50,2         ;draw a circle
;Slice 0,44,320,200,$fff8,3,8,32,320,320 ;set up a slice
>Show 0                      ;show the bitmap
;MouseWait
```

See Also:

Use Slice, Show, FreeSlices

Statement: Use Slice

Syntax: Use Slice *Slice#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Use Slice is used to set the specified slice object as being the currently used slice. This is required for commands such as **Show**, **ShowF**, **ShowB** and Blitz mode **RGB**.

Example:

```

;
; program example
;

BLITZ                      ;into blitz mode...
BitMap 0,320,200,3          ;set up a bitmap
Circlef 160,100,80,2         ;draw a circle on it
Slice 0,44,320,100,$fff8,3,8,8,320,320 ;one slice...
Slice 1,44,320,146,$fff8,3,8,8,320,320 ;another...
Use Slice 0                 ;use the first one..
Show 0
RGB 2,15,15,0               ;Rgb/Show affects slice 0
Use Slice 1                 ;use slice 1
Show 0
RGB 2,0,8,15                ;Rgb and Show into it
MouseWait

```

See Also:

Slice, FreeSlices

Statement: FreeSlices

Syntax: FreeSlices

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

FreeSlices is used to completely free all slices currently in use. As there is no capability to **Free** individual slices, this is the only means by which slices may be deleted.

See Also:

Slice

Statement: Show

Syntax: Show *Bitmap#[X,Y]*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Show is used to display a bitmap in the currently used slice. This slice should not be a dual-playfield type slice. Optional *X* and *Y* parameters may be used to position the bitmap at a point other than its top-left. This is normally only of use in cases where a bitmap larger than the slice width and/or height has been set up.

Example:

```
;  
; scrolling bitmap program example  
;  
BLITZ ;Go into Blitz Mode  
BitMap 0,640,200,2 ;create bitmap 0  
Circlef 320,100,80,1 ;draw a circle on it..  
Circlef 320,100,40,2 ;and another...  
Slice 0,44,320,200,$ffff8,2,8,4,640,640 ;create slice 0  
  
For k=0 To 319 ;start of loop  
  VWait ;wait for top of frame  
  Show 0,k,0 ;show bitmap 0  
  Next ;end of loop  
  
MouseWait
```

See Also:

ShowF, **ShowB**

Statement: **ShowF**

Syntax: **ShowF** *BitMap#[X,Y[ShowB X]]*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ShowF is used to display a bitmap in the foreground of the currently used slice. The slice must have been created with the appropriate *Flags* parameter in order to support dual-playfield display.

Optional *X* and *Y* parameters may be used to show the bitmap at a point other than it's top-left. Omitting the *X* and *Y* parameters is identical to supplying *X* and *Y* values of 0.

The optional *ShowB x* parameter is only of use in special situations where a dual-playfield slice has been created to display ONLY a foreground bitmap. In this case, the *X* offset of the background bitmap should be specified in the *ShowB x* parameter.

Example:

```
;  
; dpf slice example program example  
;  
BLITZ ;blitz mode  
BitMap 0,640,200,2 ;create a bitmap  
Circlef 320,100,80,1 ;put a circle on it  
Circlef 320,100,40,2 ;and another  
Slice 0,44,320,200,$ffffa,4,8,32,640,640 ;dual-playfield slice!  
  ShowB 0,160,0 ;show background bitmap  
  
For k=0 To 319 ;begin a loop  
  VWait ;wait for vertical blank  
  ShowF 0,k,0 ;show foreground bitmap  
  Next ;end of loop
```

MouseWait**Statement: ShowB**

Syntax: ShowB *BitMap#[,X,Y[,ShowF X]]*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ShowB is used to display a bitmap in the background of the currently used slice. The slice must have been created with the appropriate *Flags* parameter in order to support dual-playfield display.

Optional *X* and *Y* parameters may be used to show the bitmap at a point other than it's top-left. Omitting the *X* and *Y* parameters is identical to supplying *X* and *Y* values of 0.

The optional *ShowF x* parameter is only of use in special situations where a dual-playfield slice has been created to display ONLY a background bitmap. In this case, the *X* offset of the foreground bitmap should be specified in the *ShowF x* parameter.

Example:

```
;
; showb and showf program example
;
;BLITZ           ;blitz mode
BitMap 0,640,200,2      ;create a bitmap
Circlef 320,100,80,1     ;put a circle on it
Circlef 320,100,40,2     ;and another
Slice 0,44,320,200,$ffffa,4,8,32,640,640 ;dual-playfield slice!
ShowF 0,160,0            ;show background bitmap

For k=0 To 319          ;begin a loop
  VWait                 ;wait for vertical blank
  ShowB 0,k,0            ;show foreground bitmap
  Next                  ;end of loop

MouseWait
```

Statement: ColSplit

Syntax: ColSplit *Colour Register,Red,Green,Blue,Y*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ColSplit allows you to change any of the palette colour registers at a position relative to the top of the currently used slice. This allows you to 're-use' colour registers at different positions down the screen to display different colours.

Y specifies a vertical offset from the top of the currently used slice.

Example:

```
; colsplit program example

BLITZ ;enter blitz mode
BitMap 0,320,200,1 ;get an empty bitmap
Slice 0,44,320,200,$fff8,1,8,32,320,320 ;set up a slice
Show 0 ;show the bitmap

For k=0 To 15 ;begin loop
  ColSplit 0,k,k,k*k*17 ;set background register at
                        ;a clever Y position
Next ;end loop

MouseWait
```

Statement: CustomCop

Syntax: CustomCop Copin\$,Y

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

CustomCop allows advanced programmers to introduce their own copper instructions at a specified position down the display. *Copin\$* refers to a string of characters equivalent to a series of copper instructions. *Y* refers to a position down the display.

Example:

```
; custom copper list program example
;

BLITZ ;Blitz mode
#BPLMOD1=$108 ;some clever stuff..
#BPLMOD2=$10A ;ditto
BitMap 0,320,400,3

For k=7 To 1 Step -1
  Circlef 160,250,k*10,k ;draw the SUN!
Next

Slice 0,44,320,200,$fff8,3,8,32,320,320 ;set up a slice
RGB 0,0,8,15

For k=1 To 7
  RGB k,15,k*2,0
Next

ColSplit 0,0,0,8,150 ;groovy colour split
co$=Mki$(#BPLMOD1)+Mki$(-122)
co$+Mki$(#BPLMOD2)+Mki$(-122)
CustomCop co$,150+44 ;custom copper instructions
```

```

For k=0 To 199
  VWait
  Show 0,0,k      ;up comes the sun...
Next

```

MouseWait

See Also:

ColSplit

Statement: **ShowBlitz**

Syntax: **ShowBlitz**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

ShowBlitz redisplays the entire set up of slices. This may be necessary if you have made a quick trip into Amiga mode, and wish to return to Blitz mode with previously created slices intact.

Function: **CopLoc**

Syntax: **CopLoc**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

CopLoc returns the memory address of the Blitz mode copper list. All **Slices**, **ColSplits**, and **CustomCops** executed are merged into a single copper list, the address of which may be found using the **CopLoc** function.

Example:

```

;
; print out of copper list program example
;
Slice 0,44,3

```

```

For k=0 To CopLen-1 Step 4
  NPrint Hex$(k),":",Hex$(Peek.I(CopLoc+k))
Next

```

MouseWait

See Also:

CopLen

Function: **CopLen**

Syntax: **CopLen**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

CopLen returns the length, in bytes, of the Blitz mode copper list. All **Slices**, **ColSplits**, and **CustomCops** executed are merged into a single copper list, the length of which may be found using the **CopLen** function.

See Also:

CopLoc

Statement: **Display**

Syntax: **Display On/Off**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

Display is a blitz mode only command which allows you to 'turn on' or 'turn off' the entire display. If the display is turned off, the display will appear as a solid block of colour 0.

20. Sprites



Sprites are another way of producing moving objects on the Amiga's display. Sprites are, like shapes, graphical objects. However unlike shapes, sprites are handled by the Amiga's hardware completely separately from bitmaps. This means that sprites do not have to be erased when it's time to move them, and that sprites in no way destroy or interfere with bitmap graphics. Also, once a sprite has been displayed, it need not be referenced again until it has to be moved.

However, all this power does not come cheap. There are some limitations that must be observed when using sprites:

- * In this release of Blitz 2, sprites are only available in Blitz mode.
- * Sprites must be of either 3 or 15 colours (2 or 4 bitplanes).
- * Each Blitz mode slice may display a maximum of up to 8 sprites. Other conditions may lower this maximum.
- * Sprites are always displayed in low resolution mode, regardless of the display mode of the slice they are in.
- * Sprites may only be positioned at low resolution pixel positions.

Sprites are displayed through the use of eight 'sprite channels', numbered 0 through 7. To display a sprite, you tell a sprite channel to display a specific image at a specific position. If you are displaying a three colour sprite, you may specify any of the eight sprite channels (0 through 7).

If you are displaying a fifteen colour sprite, you may only specify an even-numbered sprite channel (0,2,4,6). Fifteen colour sprites also 'tie-up' the associated odd-numbered sprite channel. For example, displaying a fifteen colour sprite through sprite channel 2 will make sprite channel 3 unavailable. This is because each 15 colour sprite requires 2 sprite channels.

The Amiga's hardware actually limits individual sprites to a maximum width of 16 lo-res pixels. However, Blitz 2 allows you to display sprites of greater width by splitting a shape up into groups of sixteen pixels. This means that a Blitz 2 'sprite' may take up more than one sprite channel. For example, a 32 pixel wide 3 colour 'sprite' displayed through sprite channel 4 will actually be converted to two 16 pixel wide sprites displayed through channels 4 and 5. Similarly, a 48 pixel wide 15 colour 'sprite' displayed through sprite channel 0 will take up sprite channels 0 through 5.

Sprites also require a special colour palette set up. Fifteen colour sprites take their RGB values from colour registers 17 through 31. Three colour sprites, however, take on RGB values depending upon the sprite channels being used to display them.

The following table shows which palette registers affect which sprite channels:

Sprite Channel	Colour Registers
0,1	17-19
2,3	21-23
4,5	25-27
6,7	29-31

Statement: GetaSprite

Syntax: **GetaSprite Sprite#,Shape#**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

To be able to display a sprite, you must first create a sprite object. This will contain the image information for the sprite. **GetaSprite** will transfer the graphic data contained in a shape object into a sprite object. This allows you to perform any of the Blitz 2 shape manipulation commands (eg **Scale** or **Rotate**) on a shape before creating a sprite from the shape.

Once **GetaSprite** has been executed, you may not require the shape object anymore. In this case, it is best to free up the shape object (using **Free Shape**) to conserve as much valuable chip memory as possible.

Example:

```
; simple sprites example
;
BitMap 0,320,DispHeight,2      ;create a bitmap
Boxf 0,0,63,63,1              ;draw some stuff on it..
Boxf 8,8,55,55,2
Boxf 16,16,47,47,3
GetaShape 0,0,0,64,64        ;turn stuff into a shape
GetaSprite 0,0                ;turn shape into a sprite
Free Shape 0                  ;we don't need the shape anymore...
BLITZ                         ;go into blitz mode.
Cls                           ;clear bitmap
Slice 0,44,2                  ;create a slice
Show 0                        ;show bitmap 0 in the slice
For k=0 To 1                  ;Since the sprite is 64 pixels wide,
RGB k*4+17,15,15,0            ;it will require 4 sprite channels (64/16)
RGB k*4+18,15,8,0             ;therefore, we must set palette
RGB k*4+19,15,4,0             ;registers appropriately
Next

For k=0 To 319                ;start of loop
VWait                         ;wait for vertical blank
ShowSprite 0,k,100,0           ;show the sprite...
Next                          ;end of loop
```

MouseWait

See Also:

Free Sprite, ShowSprite

Statement: ShowSprite

Syntax: **ShowSprite** *Sprite#,X,Y,Sprite Channel*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ShowSprite is the command used to actually display a sprite through a sprite channel. *X* and *Y* specify the position the sprite is to be displayed at. These parameters are ALWAYS given in low-resolution pixels. *Sprite Channel* is a value 0 through 7 which decides which sprite channel the sprite should be displayed through.

See Also:

GetaSprite

Statement: InFront

Syntax: **InFront** *Sprite Channel*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

A feature of sprites is that they may be displayed either 'in front of' or 'behind' the bitmap graphics they are appearing in. The **InFront** command allows you to determine which sprites appear in front of bitmaps, and which sprites appear behind.

Sprite Channel must be an even number in the range 0 through 8. After executing an **InFront** command, sprites displayed through sprite channels greater than or equal to *Sprite Channel* will appear BEHIND any bitmap graphics. Sprites displayed through channels less than *Sprite Channel* will appear IN FRONT OF any bitmap graphics.

For example, after executing an **InFront 4**, any sprites displayed through sprite channels 4,5,6 or 7 will appear behind any bitmap graphics, while any sprites displayed through sprite channels 0,1,2 or 3 will appear in front of any bitmap graphics.

InFront should only be used in non-dualplayfield slices. For dualplayfield slices, use **InFrontF** and **InFrontB**.

Example:

```
; sprite priorities example
;
BitMap 0,320,DispHeight,2      ;create a bitmap
Boxf 0,0,63,63,1              ;draw some stuff on it..
Boxf 8,8,55,55,2
Boxf 16,16,47,47,3
GetShape 0,0,0,64,64          ;turn stuff into a shape
GetSprite 0,0                  ;turn shape into a sprite
Free Shape 0                  ;we don't need the shape anymore...
BLITZ                         ;go into blitz mode.
Cls                           ;clear bitmap
```

```
Slice 0,44,2      ;create a slice
Show 0           ;show bitmap 0 in the slice

For k=0 To 3      ;This loop will set all 3 colour
  RGB k*4+17,15,15,0   ;sprites to the same colours...
  RGB k*4+18,15,8,0
  RGB k*4+19,15,4,0
Next

Circlef 0,160,100,90,3    ;a circle +...
Circlef 0,160,100,80,0    ;a hole = a donut!
InFront 4           ;sprites 4-7 are 'behind'

For k=0 To 319        ;start of loop
  VWait               ;wait for vertical blank
  ShowSprite 0,k,20,0   ;show in front sprite...
  ShowSprite 0,k,120,4   ;show behind sprite
Next                 ;end of loop
```

MouseWait

See Also:

InFrontF, **InFrontB**

Statement: **InFrontF**

Syntax: **InFrontF** *Sprite Channel*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

InFrontF is used on dualplayfield slices to determine sprite/playfield priority with respect to the foreground playfield. Using combinations of **InFrontF** and **InFrontB** (used for the background playfield), it is possible to display sprites at up to 3 different depths - some in front of both playfields, some between the playfields, and some behind both playfields.

Please refer to **InFront** for more information on the *Sprite Channel* parameter.

Example:

```
; sprites example
;
BitMap 1,320,200,2      ;create 'background' bitmap
Boxf 80,50,240,150,3    ;draw a box on it for scenery
BitMap 0,320,200,2      ;create 'foreground' bitmap
Boxf 0,0,63,63,1         ;draw some boxes...Boxf 8,8,55,55,2
Boxf 16,16,47,47,3
GetShape 0,0,0,64,64      ;pick up a shape
GetSprite 0,0              ;turn it into a sprite
Free Shape 0               ;free shape as we no longer need it
Cls                        ;clear bitmap
```

```

CircleF 160,100,90,3      ;make some foreground scenery
CircleF 160,100,80,0
BLITZ                      ;go into BLITZ mode
Slice 0,44,320,200,$ffff2,4,8,32,320,320 ;a dualplayfield slice!
ShowF 0                    ;show foreground bitmap
ShowB 1                    ;show background bitmap

For k=0 To 3            ;set all sprite colours...
  RGB k*4+17,15,15,0
  RGB k*4+18,15,8,0
  RGB k*4+19,15,4,0
Next

InFrontF 0              ;foreground is in front of sprites 2-7
InFrontB 4              ;background is in front of sprites 4-7

For x=0 To 319        ;loop for sprite move
  VWait                  ;wait for vertical blank
  ShowSprite 0,x,20,0 ;sprite behind foreground, infront of background
  ShowSprite 0,x,120,4 ;show sprite behind everything
Next                     ;end of sprite move loop

MouseWait

```

See Also:

InFront, **InFrontB**

Statement: **InFrontB**

Syntax: **InFrontB** *Sprite Channel*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

InFrontB is used on dualplayfield slices to determine sprite/playfield priority with respect to the background playfield. Using combinations of **InFrontB** and **InFrontF** (used for the foreground playfield), it is possible to display sprites at up to 3 different depths - some in front of both playfields, some between the playfields, and some behind both playfields.

Please refer to **InFront** for more information on the *Sprite Channel* parameter.

See Also:

InFront, **InFrontF**

Statement: LoadSprites

Syntax: LoadSprites *Sprite#[,Sprite#],Filename\$*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

LoadSprites lets you load a 'range' of sprites from disk into a series of sprite objects. The file specified by *Filename\$* should have been created using the **SaveSprites** command.

The first *Sprite#* parameter specifies the number of the first sprite object to be loaded. Further sprites will be loaded into increasingly higher sprite objects.

If a second *Sprite#* parameter is supplied, then only sprites up to and including the second *Sprite#* value will be loaded. If there are not enough sprites in the file to fill this range, any excess sprites will remain untouched.

See Also:

SaveSprites

Statement: SaveSprites

Syntax: SaveSprites *Sprite#,Sprite#,Filename\$*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

SaveSprites allows you to create a file containing a range of sprite objects. This file may be later loaded using the **LoadSprites** command.

The range of sprites to be saved is specified by *Sprite#,Sprite#*, where the first *Sprite#* refers to the lowest sprite to be saved and the second *Sprite#* the highest.

See Also:

LoadSprites

21. Blitting



This section will cover all commands which allow you to draw shapes onto bitmaps using the Amiga's 'blitter' chip.

Statement: Blit

Syntax: **Blit Shape#,X,Y[,Excessonoff]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Blit is the simplest of all the blitting commands. **Blit** will simply draw a shape object onto the currently used bitmap at the pixel position specified by *X,Y*. The shape's handle, if any, will be taken into account when positioning the blit.

The optional *Excessonoff* parameter only comes into use if you are blitting a shape which has less bitplanes (colours) than the bitmap to which it is being blitted. In this case, *Excessonoff* allows you to specify an on/off value for the excess bitplanes - ie, the bitplanes beyond those altered by the shape. Bit zero of *Excessonoff* will specify an on/off value for the first excess bitplane, bit one an on/off value for the second excess bitplane and so on.

The manner in which the shape is drawn onto the bitmap may be altered by use of the **BlitMode** command.

Example:

```
;  
; getashape and Blit example  
;  
Screen 0,3  
ScreensBitMap 0,0  
Cls  
Circlef 32,32,32,3  
Circlef 32,32,16,2  
GetShape 0,0,0,64,64  
Cls  
Blit 0,160,100  
MouseWait
```

See Also

BlitMode, **QBlit**, **BBlit**

Statement: BlitMode

Syntax: **BlitMode** *BLTCON0*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **BlitMode** command allows you to specify just how the **Blit** command uses the blitter when drawing shapes to bitmaps. By default, **BlitMode** is set to a 'cookiemode' which simply draws shapes 'as is'. However, this mode may be altered to produce other useful ways of drawing. Here are just some of the possible *BLTCON0* parameters and their effects:

BLTCON0 Mode	Effect
CookieMode	Shapes are drawn 'as is'.
EraseMode	An area the size and shape of the shape will be 'erased' on the destination bitmap.
InvMode	An area the size and shape of the shape will be 'inversed' on the destination bitmap.
SolidMode	The shape will be drawn as a solid area of one colour.

Actually, these modes are all just special functions which return a useful value. Advanced programmers may be interested to know that the *BLTCON0* parameter is used by the **Blit** command's blitter routine to determine the blitter MINITERM and CHANNEL USE flags. Bits zero through seven specify the miniterm, and bits eight through eleven specify which of the blitter channels are used. For the curious out there, all the blitter routines in Blitz 2 assume the following blitter channel setup:

Channel	Use
A	Pointer to shape's cookie cut
B	Pointer to shape data
C	Pointer to destination
D	Pointer to destination

Example:

```
;
; different blitmode examples
;
Screen 0,3           ;open an intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0      ;and use it's bitmap
Cls                   ;clear bitmap

For k=7 To 1 Step -1   ;start of loop
  Circlef 32,32,k*4,k  ;groovy circles
```

Next ;end of loop

```

GetShape 0,0,64,64      ;pick shape up
Cls 2                  ;clear bitmap again, with colour 2
Circlef 160,100,120,90,6 ;draw a circle.
BlitMode CookieMode   ;try a blit mode
Blit 0,0,0
BlitMode EraseMode    ;another...
Blit 0,160,0
BlitMode InvMode      ;another...
Blit 0,0,100
BlitMode SolidMode   ;and a last...
Blit 0,160,100

```

MouseWait

See Also:

QBlitMode, **BBlitMode**, **SBlitMode**

Function: **CookieMode**

Syntax: **CookieMode**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **CookieMode** function returns a value which may be used by one of the commands involved in blitting modes.

Using **CookieMode** as a blitting mode will cause a shape to be blitted cleanly, 'as is', onto a bitmap.

See Also:

BlitMode, **BBlitMode**, **QBlitMode**, **SBlitMode**, **EraseMode**, **InvMode**, **SolidMode**

Function: **EraseMode**

Syntax: **EraseMode**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **EraseMode** function returns a value which may be used by one the commands involved in blitting modes.

Using **EraseMode** as a blitting mode will cause a blitted shape to erase a section of a bitmap corresponding to the outline of the shape.

See Also:

BlitMode, BBlitMode, QBlitMode, SBlitMode, CookieMode, InvMode, SolidMode

Statement: InvMode

Syntax: **InvMode**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **InvMode** function returns a value which may be used by one the commands involved in blitting modes.

Using **InvMode** as a blitting mode will cause a shape to 'invert' a section of a bitmap corresponding to the outline of the blitted shape.

See Also:

BlitMode, BBlitMode, QBlitMode, SBlitMode, CookieMode, EraseMode, SolidMode

Statement: SolidMode

Syntax: **SolidMode**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **SolidMode** function returns a value which may be used by one the commands involved in blitting modes.

Using **SolidMode** as a blitting mode will cause a shape to overwrite a section of a bitmap corresponding to the outline of the blitted shape.

See Also:

BlitMode, BBlitMode, QBlitMode, SBlitMode, CookieMode, EraseMode, InvMode

Statement: Queue

Syntax: **Queue Queue#, Max Items**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Queue** command creates a queue object for use with the **QBlit** and **UnQueue** commands. What is a queue? Well, queues (in the Blitz 2 sense) are used for the purpose of multi-shape animation. Before going into what a queue is, let's have a quick look at the basics of animation.

Say you want to get a group of objects flying around the screen. To achieve this, you will have to construct a loop similar to the following:

- Step 1: Start at the first object
- Step 2: Erase the object from the display
- Step 3: Move the object
- Step 4: Draw the object at it's new location on the display
- Step 5: If there are any more objects to move, go on to the next object and then go to step 2, else...
- Step 6: go to step 1

Step 2 is very important, as if it is left out, all the objects will leave trails behind them! However, it is often very cumbersome to have to erase every object you wish to move. This is where queues are of use.

Using queues, you can 'remember' all the objects drawn through a loop, then, at the end of the loop (or at the start of the next loop), erase all the objects 'remembered' from the previous loop. Lets have a look at how this works:

- Step 1: Erase all objects remembered in the queue
- Step 2: Start at the first object
- Step 3: Move the object
- Step 4: Draw the object at it's new location, and add it to the end of the queue
- Step 5: If there are any objects left to move, go on to the next object, then go to step 3; else...
- Step 6: Go to step 1

This is achieved quite easily using Blitz 2's queue system. The **UnQueue** command performs step 1, and the **QBlit** command performs step 4.

Queues purpose is to initialize the actual queue used to remember objects in. **Queue** must be told the maximum number of items the queue is capable of remembering, which is specified in the *Max Items* parameter.

Example:

```

;
; queue and unqueue blitting example
;
Screen 0,1          ;open intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0    ;use it's bitmap
Cls                 ;clear the bitmap
Circlef 16,16,16,1   ;draw a circle
GetShape 0,0,32,32   ;turn it into a shape
Cls                 ;clear the screen again
Queue 0,8           ;initialized our queue - 8 items max!
BLITZ                ;go into blitz mode for speed!

For y=0 To 160      ;move down the bitmap
VWait                ;wait for top of frame
UnQueue 0            ;erase all previously QBlitted items
For x=1 To 8        ;move across the bitmap
  QBlit 0,0,x*32,y    ;draw object and remember it in queue 0
Next                  ;again...
Next                  ;again...

MouseWait
```

See Also:

QBlit, UnQueue

Statement: **QBlit**

Syntax: **QBlit Queue#,Shape#,X,Y[,Excessonoff]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

QBlit performs similarly to **Blit**, and is also used to draw a shape onto the currently used bitmap. Where **QBlit** differs, however, is in that it also remembers (using a queue) where the shape was drawn, and how big it was. This allows a later **UnQueue** command to erase the drawn shape.

Please refer to the **Queue** command for an explanation of the use of queues.

The optional *Excessonoff* parameter works identically to the *Excessonoff* parameter used by the **Blit** command. Please refer to the **Blit** command for more information on this parameter.

See Also:

Queue, UnQueue, Blit

Statement: **UnQueue**

Syntax: **UnQueue Queue#[,BitMap#]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

UnQueue is used to erase all 'remembered' items in a queue. Items are placed in a queue by use of the **QBlit** command. Please refer to **Queue** for a full explanation of queues and their usage.

An optional *BitMap#* parameter may be supplied to cause items to be erased by way of 'replacement' from another bitmap, as opposed to the normal 'zeroing out' erasing.

Example:

```
;  
; unqueueing from separate bitmap  
;  
Screen 0,1          ;open intuition screen  
ScreensBitMap 0,0    ;use it's bitmap  
Cls                 ;clear the bitmap  
Circlef 16,16,16,1   ;draw a circle  
GetShape 0,0,0,32,32 ;turn it into a shape  
Cls                 ;clear the screen again  
  
For k=1 To 100  
  Circlef Rnd(320),Rnd(DispHeight),Rnd(50),1 ;draw some circles  
Next
```

```

CopyBitMap 0,1      ;make an identical copy of bitmap 0
Queue 0,8          ;initialized our queue - 8 items max!
BLITZ              ;go into blitz mode for speed!

For y=0 To 160    ;move down the bitmap
VWait             ;wait for top of frame
UnQueue 0,1         ;erase all previously QBlitted items
For x=1 To 8       ;move across the bitmap
QBlit 0,0,x*32,y   ;draw object and remember it in queue 0
Next               ;again...
Next               ;again...

MouseWait

```

Statement: **FlushQueue**

Syntax: **FlushQueue** Queue#

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

FlushQueue will force the specified queue object to be 'emptied', causing the next **UnQueue** command to have no effect.

See Also:

Queue, **QBlit**

Statement: **QBlitMode**

Syntax: **QBlitMode** BLTCONO

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

QBlitMode allows you to control how the blitter operates when **QBlitting** shapes to bitmaps. Please refer to **BlitMode** for more information on this command.

See Also:

BlitMode

Statement: **Buffer**

Syntax: **Buffer** Buffer#,Memorylen

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Buffer** command is used to create a buffer object. Buffers are similar to queues in concept, but operate slightly differently. If you have not yet read the description of the **Queue** command, it would be a good idea to do so before continuing here.

The buffer related commands are very similar to the queue related commands - **Buffer**, **BBlit**, and **UnBuffer**, and are used in exactly the same way. Where buffers differ from queues, however, is in their ability to preserve background graphics. Whereas an **UnQueue** command normally trashes any background graphics, **UnBuffer** will politely restore whatever the **BBlits** may have overwritten. This is achieved by the **BBlit** command actually performing two blits.

The first blit transfers the area on the bitmap which the shape is about to cover to a temporary storage area - the second blit actually draws the shape onto the bitmap. When the time comes to **UnBuffer** all those **BBlits**, the temporary storage areas will be transferred back to the disrupted bitmap.

The *Memorylen* parameter of the **Buffer** command refers to how much memory, in bytes, should be put aside as temporary storage for the preservation of background graphics. The value of this parameter varies depending upon the size of shapes to **BBlited**, and the maximum number of shapes to be **BBlited** between **UnBuffers**.

A *Memorylen* of 16384 should be plenty for most situations, but may need to be increased if you start getting 'Buffer Overflow' error messages.

Example:

```
; buffer blitting example
;
BitMap 0,64,64,1
Boxf 0,0,63,63,1
GetShape 0,0,0,64,64
FindScreen 0
ScreensBitMap 0,0
Buffer 0,16384      ;16384 bytes for buffer

For x=0 To 600
  VWait
  UnBuffer 0        ;undo eny blits
  BBlit 0,0,x,192   ;buffer blit
Next

MouseWait
```

Statement: **BBlit**

Syntax: **BBlit Buffer#,Shape#,X,Y[,Excessonoff]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **BBlit** command is used to draw a shape onto the currently used bitmap, and preserve the overwritten area into a previously initialized buffer. For more information on how buffers work, please refer to the **Buffer** command.

The optional *Excessonoff* parameter works identically to the *Excessonoff* parameter used by the **Blit**

command. Please refer to the **Blit** command for more information on this parameter.

Example:

```

;
; buffer blitting example
;

Screen 0,3           ;open intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0      ;use it's bitmap for our graphics
Cls                  ;clear the bitmap
Circlef 8,8,8,7        ;draw a circle
GetShape 0,0,0,20,16   ;get it for use as a shape
Cls                  ;clear bitmap again

For k=1 To 100       ;draw 100 random box's
  Boxf Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(6)+1
Next

Buffer 0,16384        ;set buffer memory size

While Joyb(0)=0      ;loop into mouse button clicked
  VWait                ;wait for vertical blank
  UnBuffer 0            ;replace areas on bitmap
  BBlit 0,0,SMouseX/2+80,SMouseY/2+50 ;blit object - add to buffer
Wend

```

See Also:

Buffer, **UnBuffer**

Statement: **UnBuffer**

Syntax: **UnBuffer** *Buffer#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

UnBuffer is used to 'replace' areas on a bitmap overwritten by a series of **BBlit** commands. For more information on buffers, please refer to the **Buffer** command.

See Also:

Buffer, **BBlit**

Statement: **FlushBuffer**

Syntax: **FlushBuffer** *Buffer#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

FlushBuffer will force the specified buffer object to be 'emptied', causing the next **UnBuffer** command to have no effect.

See Also:

Buffer, **BBlit**

Statement: **BBlitMode**

Syntax: **BBlitmode** *BLTCON0*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

BBlitMode allows you to control how the blitter operates when **BBlitting** shapes to bitmaps. Please refer to **BlitMode** for more information on this command.

See Also:

BlitMode

Statement: **Stencil**

Syntax: **Stencil** *Stencil#,BitMap#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Stencil** command will create a stencil object based on the contents of a previously created bitmap. The stencil will contain information based on all graphics contained in the bitmap, and may be used with the **SBlit** and **ShowStencil** commands.

Example:

```
;  
; stencil blit examples  
;  
For k=1 To 7      ;draw some concentric circles  
  Circle 160,115,k*10,k  
Next  
  
Stencil 0,0          ;make a stencil out of bitmap 0  
Buffer 0,16384       ;set up a buffer for BBlit  
BLITZ                ;into Blitz mode!  
  
For x=0 To 280     ;move shapes across...  
  VWait              ;wait for vertical blank  
  UnBuffer 0          ;replace BBlits  
  For y=50 To 150 Step 50  
    BBlit 0,0,x,y     ;BBlit some of our shapes  
  Next  
  ShowStencil 0,0      ;replace stencil area
```

[Next](#)[MouseWait](#)

Statement: SBlit

Syntax: **SBlit Stencil#,Shape#,X,Y[,Excessonoff]**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SBlit works identically to the **Blit** command, and also updates the specified *Stencil#*. This is an easy way to render 'foreground' graphics to a bitmap.

Example:

```

;
; more stencil blitting
;
Screen 0,3          ;open an intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0     ;find it's bitmap
Boxf 0,0,31,31,3     ;draw a box on the bitmap
GetShape 0,0,32,32    ;pick it up as shape 0
Cls                 ;clear bitmap
Boxf 0,0,15,15,4      ;draw another box
GetShape 1,0,0,16,16   ;pick it up as shape 1
Cls                 ;another cls
Stencil 0,0           ;create a stencil

For k=7 To 1 Step -1  ;draw a background 'bullseye'
  Circlef 160,115,k*10,k
Next

For k=1 To 50          ;draw up 50 random 'foreground' blocks
  SBlit 0,1,Rnd(320-16),Rnd(200-16)
Next

Buffer 0,16384         ;initialize buffer

BLITZ                ;into BLITZ MODE!

For x=0 To 280         ;start of loop
  VWait               ;wait for vertical blank
  UnBuffer 0           ;replace buffer contents
  For y=50 To 150 Step 50
    BBlit 0,0,x,y      ;blit up our shape
  Next
  ShowStencil 0,0       ;cover-up stenciled areas
Next

MouseWait

```

Statement: SBlitMode

Syntax: **SBlitMode** *BLTCONO*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SBlitmode is used to determine how the **SBlit** command operates. Please refer to the **BlitMode** command for more information on blitting modes.

See Also:

BlitMode

Statement: ShowStencil

Syntax: **ShowStencil** *Buffer#,Stencil#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ShowStencil is used in connection with **BBlits** and stencil objects to produce a 'stencil' effect. Stencils allow you create the effect of shapes moving 'between' background and foreground graphics. Used properly, stencils can add a sense of 'depth' or 'three dimensionality' to animations.

In order to understand the following, it is recommended that the description of the **Buffer** command first be read, as stencils and buffers are closely connected.

So what steps are involved in using stencils? To begin with, you need both a bitmap and a stencil object. A stencil object is similar to a bitmap in that it contains various graphics. Stencils differ, however, in that they contain no colour information. They simply determine where graphics are placed on the stencil. The graphics on a stencil usually correspond to the graphics representing 'foreground' scenery on a bitmap.

So the first step is to set up a bitmap with both foreground and background scenery on it. Next, a stencil is set up with only the foreground scenery on it. This may be done using either the **Stencil** or **SBlit** command. Now, we **BBlit** our shapes. This will, of course, place all the shapes in front of both the background and the foreground graphics. However, once all shapes have been **BBlitted**, executing the **ShowStencil** command will repair the damage done to the foreground graphics!

Example:

```
;  
; bblits with stencils  
;  
Screen 0,3 ;an intuition screen  
ScreensBitMap 0,0 ;it's bitmap...now ours  
Cls ;clear bitmap  
Boxf 0,0,7,15,1 ;draw a shape...  
Boxf 8,6,15,11,2  
GetShape 0,0,0,16,16 ;pick it up as our shape.  
Cls ;clear bitmap again  
Boxf 80,50,240,150,3 ;draw some stuff...  
Boxf 90,60,230,140,0
```

```
Box 85,55,235,145,0
Stencil 0,0           ;make a stencil out of the bitmap
Cls                  ;clear bitmap again
Circlef 160,100,90,4   ;draw background graphics...
Boxf 80,50,240,150,3    ;and foreground (again!)
Boxf 90,60,230,140,4
Box 85,55,235,145,4
Buffer 0,16384        ;set up a buffer for BBlit
BLITZ                 ;go into blitz mode for more speed

For x=0 To 300         ;start of loop
VWait:UnBuffer 0       ;wait for top of frame; replace buffer
For y=40 To 140 Step 50 ;start of loop to draw 3 shapes
  BBlit 0,0,x,y        ;put up a shape
Next
ShowStencil 0,0         ;replace foreground
Next
```

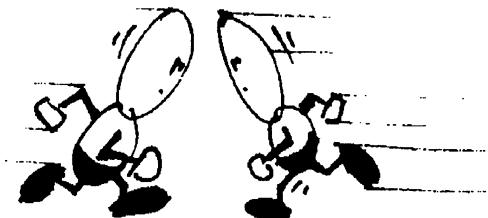
MouseWait

See Also:

Buffer, BBlit, Stencil, SBlit, UnBuffer

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

22. Collisions



This section deals with various commands involved in the detection of object collisions.

Statement: SetColl

Syntax: SetColl *Colour, Bitplanes[, Playfield]*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

There are 3 different commands involved in controlling sprite(bitmap) collision detection, of which **SetColl** is one (the other 2 being **SetCollOdd** and **SetCollHi**). All three determine what colours in a bitmap will cause a collision with sprites. This allows you to design bitmaps with 'safe' and 'unsafe' areas.

SetColl allows you to specify a single colour which, when present in a bitmap, and in contact with a sprite, will cause a collision. The *Colour* parameter refers to the 'collidable' colour. *Bitplanes* refers to the number of bitplanes (depth) of the bitmap collisions are to be tested for in.

The optional *PlayField* parameter is only used in a dualplayfield slice. If *Playfield* is 1, then *Colour* refers to a colour in the foreground bitmap. If *Playfield* is 0, then *Colour* refers to a colour in the background bitmap.

DoColl and **PColl** are the commands used for actually detecting the collisions.

Example:

```

;
; death star collision example
;

BitMap 0,320,200,4      ;create a 16 colour bitmap
BitMapOutput 0            ;send print statements there
Boxf 0,0,7,7,1           ;draw a box on the bitmap
GetShape 0,0,0,8,8        ;pick it up as a shape
GetSprite 0,0              ;turn shape into a sprite
Free Shape 0              ;free shape - we don't need it
Cls                      ;Clear the bitmap

BLITZ                     ;BLITZ MODE!
Slice 0,44,320,200,$fff8,4,8,32,320,320 ;simple slice
Show 0                    ;show bitmap in slice

For k=1 To 100            ;draw 100 stars
  Plot Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(14)+1    ;in any colour but 15!
Next

```

```
Circlef 160,100,40,15 ;the death star! in colour 15!
SetColl 15,4           ;collide with colour 15
Mouse On               ;enable mouse
Pointer 0,0             ;set mouse pointer
While Joyb(0)=0        ;while the mouse button is left alone...
  VWait                ;wait for vertical blank
  DoColl               ;ask Blitz ) to suss collisions
  Locate 0,0             ;text cursor position
  If PColl(0)            ;did sprite channel 0 collide with bitmap ?
    Print "BANG!"       ;Yes - BANG!
  Else
    Print "      "       ;No
  EndIf
Wend
```

See Also:

SetCollOdd, SetCollHi, DoColl, PColl

Statement: **SetCollOdd**

Syntax: **SetCollOdd**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SetCollOdd is used to control the detection of sprite/bitmap collisions. **SetCollOdd** will cause ONLY the collisions between sprites and 'odd coloured' bitmap graphics to be reported. Odd coloured bitmap graphics refers to any bitmap graphics rendered in an odd colour number (ie: 1,3,5...). This allows you to design bitmap graphics in such a way that even coloured areas are 'safe' (ie: they will not report a collision) whereas odd colour areas are 'unsafe' (ie: they will report a collision).

The **DoColl** and **PColl** commands are used to detect the actual sprite/bitmap collisions.

See Also:

SetColl, SetCollHi, DoColl, PColl

Statement: **SetCollHi**

Syntax: **SetCollHi BitPlanes**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SetCollHi may be used to enable sprite/bitmap collisions between sprites and the 'high half' colour range of a bitmap. For example, if you have a 16 colour bitmap, the high half of the colours would be colours 8 through 15.

The *BitPlanes* parameter should be set to the number of bitplanes (depth) of the bitmap with which collisions should be detected.

Please refer to the **SetColl** command for more information on sprite(bitmap) collisions.

See Also:

SetColl, SetCollOdd, DoColl, PColl

Statement: **DoColl**

Syntax: **DoColl**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

DoColl is used to perform sprite(bitmap) collision checking. Once **DoColl** is executed, the **PColl** and/or **SColl** functions may be used to check for sprite(bitmap) or sprite(sprite) collisions.

Before **DoColl** may be used with **PColl**, the type of bitmap collisions to be detected must have been specified using one of the **SetColl**, **SetCollOdd** or **SetCollHi** commands.

After executing a **DoColl**, **PColl** and **SColl** will return the same values until the next time **DoColl** is executed.

See Also:

SetColl, SetCollOdd, SetCollHi, PColl

Function: **PColl**

Syntax: **PColl (Sprite Channel)**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

The **PColl** function may be used to find out if a particular sprite has collided with any bitmaps. *Sprite Channel* refers to the sprite channel the sprite you wish to check is being displayed through. If the specified sprite has collided with any bitmap graphics, **PColl** will return a true (-1) value, otherwise **PColl** will return false (0).

Before using **PColl**, a **DoColl** must previously have been executed. Please refer to **DoColl** for more information.

See Also:

SetColl, SetCollOdd, SetCollHi, DoColl

Function: **SColl**

Syntax: **SColl** (*Sprite Channel*, *Sprite Channel*)

Modes: Blitz

Description:

SColl may be used to determine whether the 2 sprites currently displayed through the specified sprite channels have collided. If they have, **SColl** will return true (-1), otherwise **SColl** will return false (0). **DColl** must have been executed prior to using **SColl**.

See Also:

DoColl

Function: **ShapesHit**

Syntax: **ShapesHit** (*Shape#*,*X*,*Y*,*Shape#*,*X*,*Y*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **ShapesHit** function will calculate whether the rectangular areas occupied by 2 shapes overlap. **ShapesHit** will automatically take the shape handles into account.

If the 2 shapes overlap, **ShapesHit** will return true (-1), otherwise **ShapesHit** will return false (0).

See Also:

ShapeSpriteHit, **SpritesHit**

Function: **ShapeSpriteHit**

Syntax: **ShapeSpriteHit** (*Shape#*,*X*,*Y*,*Sprite#*,*X*,*Y*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **ShapeSpriteHit** function will calculate whether the rectangular area occupied by a shape at one position, and the rectangular area occupied by a sprite at another position are overlapped. If the areas do overlap, **ShapeSpriteHit** will return true (-1), otherwise **ShapeSpriteHit** will return false (0).

ShapeSpriteHit automatically takes the handles of both the shape and the sprite into account.

See Also:

ShapesHit, **SpritesHit**

Function: SpritesHit

Syntax: SpritesHit (*Sprite#*,*X*,*Y*,*Sprite#*,*X*,*Y*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **SpritesHit** function will calculate whether the rectangular areas occupied by 2 sprites overlap. **SpritesHit** will automatically take the sprite handles into account.

If the 2 sprites overlap, **SpritesHit** will return true (-1), otherwise **SpritesHit** will return false (0).

See Also:

ShapesHit, **ShapeSpriteHit**

Function: RectsHit

Syntax: RectsHit (*X1*,*Y1*,*Width1*,*Height1*,*X2*,*Y2*,*Width2*,*Height2*)

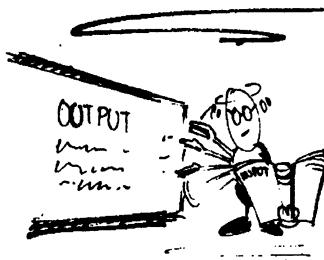
Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **RectsHit** function may be used to determine whether 2 arbitrary rectangular areas overlap. If the specified rectangular areas overlap, **RectsHit** will return true (-1), otherwise **RectsHit** will return false (0).

ELIEZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

23. BlitzIO



This section refers to various Input/Output commands available in Blitz mode.

It should be noted that although the **Joyx**, **Joyy**, **Joyr**, and **Joyb** functions do not appear here, they are still available in Blitz mode.

Statement: BlitzKeys

Syntax: **BlitzKeys On|Off**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

BlitzKeys is used to turn on or off Blitz mode keyboard reading. If Blitz mode keyboard reading is enabled, the **Inkey\$** function may be used to gain information about keystrokes in Blitz mode.

Example:

```

;
; bitmap output with blitzkeys on program example
;

BLITZ
BitMap 0,320,DispHeight,3
BitMapOutput 0
Slice 0,44,3
Show 0
BlitzKeys On
NPrint "Type Away..... (Click mouse to exit)"

While Joyb(0)=0
    Print Inkey$
Wend

End

```

See Also:

BlitzRepeat

Statement: BlitzRepeat

Syntax: **BlitzRepeat Delay,Speed**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

BlitzRepeat allows you to determine key repeat characteristics in Blitz mode. *Delay* specifies the amount of time, in fiftieths of a second, before a key will start repeating. *Speed* specifies the amount of time, again in fiftieths of a second, between repeats of a key once it has started repeating.

BlitzRepeat is only effective will the Blitz mode keyboard reading is enabled. This is done using the **BlitzKeys** command.

See Also:**BlitzKeys**

Function: RawStatus

Syntax: RawStatus (*Rawkey*)**Modes:** Blitz**Description:**

The **RawStatus** function can be used to determine if an individual key is being held down or not. *Rawkey* is the rawcode of the key to check for. If the specified key is being held down, a value of -1 will be returned. If the specified key is not being held down, a value of zero will be returned.

RawStatus is only available if Blitz mode keyboard reading has been enabled. This is done using the **BlitzKeys** command.

Example:

```
;  
; rawkey program example  
;  
BLITZ  
BitMap 0,320,DispHeight,3  
BitMapOutput 0  
Slice 0,44,3  
Show 0  
BlitzKeys On  
NPrint "Click Mouse to exit..."  
  
While Joyb(0)=0  
  
    Locate 0,1  
    Print "F1 Key is Currently:"  
    If RawStatus(80)  
        Print "Down"  
    Else  
        Print "Up "  
    EndIf  
    Wend  
  
End
```

Statement: Mouse

Syntax: **Mouse On|Off**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

The **Mouse** command turns on or off Blitz mode's ability to read the mouse. Once a **Mouse On** has been executed, programs can read the mouse's position or speed in Blitz mode.

Example:

```
; blitz mouse program example
;
BLITZ
BitMap 0,320,DispHeight,3
Slice 0,44,3
Show 0
Mouse On

While Joyb(0)=0
    Line 160,100,MouseX,MouseY,1
Wend

End
```

Statement: Pointer

Syntax: **Pointer Sprite#,Sprite Channel**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

The **Pointer** command allows you to attach a sprite object to the mouse's position in the currently used slice in Blitz mode.

To properly attach a sprite to the mouse position, several commands must be executed in the correct sequence. First, a sprite must be created using the **LoadShape** and **GetaSprite** sequence of commands. Then, a slice must be created to display the sprite in.

A **Mouse On** must then be executed to enable mouse reading.

Finally, **Pointer** is executed to attach the Sprite.

Example:

```
; custom pointer program example
;
LoadShape 0,"MySprite"           ;Must be 4 or 16 colour shape
LoadPalette 0,"MySprite",16       ;pick up palette
GetaSprite 0,0                   ;make shape into sprite!
```

BLITZ	<i>:go into BLITZ MODE!</i>
BitMap 0,320,DispHeight,3	<i>;set up a bitmap</i>
Slice 0,44,3	<i>;turn on slice</i>
Use Palette 0	<i>;add sprites palette to slice</i>
Show 0	<i>;show bitmap</i>
Mouse On	<i>;turn on blitz mode mouse reading</i>
Pointer 0,0	<i>;attach pointer</i>
MouseWait	

See Also:

Mouse

Statement: **MouseArea**

Syntax: **MouseArea Minx,Miny,Maxx,Maxy**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

MouseArea allows you to limit Blitz mode mouse movement to a rectangular section of the display. *Minx* and *Miny* define the top left corner of the area, *Maxx* and *Maxy* define the lower right corner.

MouseArea defaults to an area from 0,0 to 320,200.

Example:

```
;  
; mouse area program example  
;  
LoadShape 0,"MySprite"      ;Must be 4 or 16 colour shape  
LoadPalette 0,"MySprite",16 ;get the sprites palette  
GetSprite 0,0               ;turn shape into a sprite  
BLITZ                      ;go into blitz mode  
BitMap 0,320,DispHeight,3 ;initialize a bitmap  
Slice 0,44,3                ;create a slice  
Use Palette 0              ;add sprites colours to slice  
Show 0                     ;show bitmap  
Mouse On                   ;turn mouse on  
MouseArea 80,50,240,150    ;limit mouse to 'middle' area of display  
Pointer 0,0                 ;attach pointer  
MouseWait
```

Function: **MouseX**

Syntax: **MouseX**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

If Blitz mode mouse reading has been enabled using a **Mouse On** command, the **MouseX** function may be used to find the current horizontal location of the mouse. If mouse reading is enabled, the mouse position will be updated every fiftieth of a second, regardless of whether or not a mouse pointer sprite is attached.

Example:

```

;
; pretty lines program example
;
BLITZ           ;into blitz mode
BitMap 0,320,DispHeight,3      ;make a bitmap
Slice 0,44,3                 ;and a slice
Show 0                      ;show bitmap in slice
While NOT Joyb(0)            ;while LMB not pushed...
    VWait                   ;wait for vertical blank
    Line 160,100,MouseX,MouseY,Rnd(7)+1 ;pretty lines
Wend

```

See Also:

MouseY, MouseXSpeed, MouseYSpeed

Function: **MouseY**

Syntax: **MouseY**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

If Blitz mode mouse reading has been enabled using a **Mouse On** command, the **MouseY** function may be used to find the current vertical location of the mouse. If mouse reading is enabled, the mouse position will be updated every fiftieth of a second, regardless of whether or not a mouse pointer sprite is attached.

See Also:

MouseX, MouseXSpeed, MouseYSpeed

Function: **MouseXSpeed**

Syntax: **MouseXSpeed**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

If Blitz mode mouse reading has been enabled using a **Mouse On** command, the **MouseXSpeed** function may be used to find the current horizontal speed of mouse movement, regardless of whether or not a sprite is attached to the mouse.

If **MouseXSpeed** returns a negative value, then the mouse has been moved to the left. If a positive value is returned, the mouse has been moved to the right.

MouseXSpeed only has relevance after every vertical blank. Therefore, **MouseXSpeed** should only be used after a **VWait** has been executed, or during a vertical blank interrupt.

See Also:

MouseX, **MouseY**, **MouseYSpeed**

Function: **MouseYSpeed**

Syntax: **MouseYSpeed**

Modes: Blitz

Description:

If Blitz mode mouse reading has been enabled using a **Mouse On** command, the **MouseYSpeed** function may be used to find the current vertical speed of mouse movement, regardless of whether or not a sprite is attached to the mouse.

If **MouseYSpeed** returns a negative value, then the mouse has been moved upwards. If a positive value is returned, the mouse has been moved downwards.

MouseYSpeed only has relevance after every vertical blank. Therefore, **MouseYSpeed** should only be used after a **VWait** has been executed, or during a vertical blank interrupt.

See Also:

MouseX, **MouseY**, **MouseXSpeed**

Statement: **LoadBlitzFont**

Syntax: **LoadBlitzFont BlitzFont#,Fontname.font\$**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

LoadBlitzFont creates a blitzfont object. Blitzfonts are used in the rendering of text to bitmaps. Normally, the standard rom resident topaz font is used to render text to bitmaps. However, you may use **LoadBlitzFont** to select a font of your choice for bitmap output.

The specified *Fontname.font\$* parameter specifies the name of the font to load, which MUST be in your FONTS: directory.

LoadBlitzFont may only be used to load eight by eight non-proportional fonts.

Example:

```
;  
; blitzfont program example  
;  
LoadBlitzFont 0,"Myfont.font"      ;load blitzfont #0  
Screen 0,3                         ;open a screen
```

```

ScreensBitMap 0,0           ;get the screens bitmap
BitMapOutput 0              ;send Print to bitmap...
Print "Hello - this is my font" ;do a Print
MouseWait

```

See Also:

[Use BlitzFont](#), [Free BlitzFont](#), [BitMapOutput](#)

Statement: Use BlitzFont

Syntax: Use BlitzFont *BlitzFont#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

If you have loaded two or more blitzfont objects using [LoadBlitzFont](#), [Use BlitzFont](#) may be used to select one of these fonts for future bitmap output.

Example:

```

;
; use blitzfont program example
;
LoadBlitzFont 0,"MyFont1.font" ;load in a blitzfont...
LoadBlitzFont 1,"MyFont2.font" ;and another...
Screen 0,3                  ;open a screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0            ;get bitmap of screen
BitMapOutput 0               ;send 'Print' there...
Use BlitzFont 0              ;use first blitzfont...
NPrint "This is My Font 1..." ;print something
Use BlitzFont 1              ;use second blitzfont...
NPrint "And this is My Font 2!" ;print something
MouseWait

```

See Also:

[LoadBlitzFont](#), [Free BlitzFont](#)

Statement: Free BlitzFont

Syntax: Free BlitzFont *BlitzFont#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Free BlitzFont 'unloads' a previously loaded blitzfont object. This frees up any memory occupied by the font.

See Also:

[LoadBlitzFont](#), [Use BlitzFont](#)

Statement: BitMapOutput

Syntax: BitMapOutput *BitMap#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

BitMapOutput may be used to redirect **Print** statements to be rendered onto a bitmap. The font used for rendering may be altered using **LoadBlitzFont**. Fonts used for bitmap output must be eight by eight non-proportional fonts.

BitMapOutput is mainly of use in Blitz mode, as other forms of character output become unavailable in Blitz mode.

Example:

```
; bitmapoutput program example
;
Screen 0,3           ;open an Intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0     ;get it's bitmap
BitMapOutput 0         ;send Print statements there...
Print "Printing on a bitmap!" ;print something!
MouseWait
```

See Also:

[LoadBlitzFont](#), [Locate](#)

Statement: Colour

Syntax: Colour *Foreground Colour*[, *Background Colour*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Colour allows you to alter the colours used to render text to bitmaps. *Foreground colour* allows you to specify the colour text is rendered in, and the optional *Background colour* allows you to specify the colour of the text background.

The palette used to access these colours will depend upon whether you are in Blitz mode or in Amiga mode. In Blitz mode, colours will come from the palette of the currently used slice. In Amiga mode, colours will come from the palette of the screen the bitmap is attached to.

Example:

```

;
; colourful program example
;
Screen 0,3           ;open an Intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0    ;use it's bitmap
BitMapOutput 0       ;send Print statements

Locate 0,2

For k=0 To 7          ;loop 1...
  For J=0 To 7          ;loop 2...
    If k<>j            ;some trickery...
      Colour k,j
      Print "*"
    EndIf
  Next
Next

MouseWait

```

See Also:

BitMapOutput

Statement: Locate

Syntax: Locate X, Y

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

If you are using **BitMapOutput** to render text, **Locate** allows you to specify the cursor position at which characters are rendered.

X specifies a character position across the bitmap, and is always rounded down to a multiple of eighth.

Y specifies a character position down the bitmap, and may be a fractional value. For example, a Y of 1.5 will set a cursor position one and a half characters down from the top of the bitmap.

Each bitmap maintains its own cursor position. The **Locate** statement alters the cursor position of the bitmap specified in the most recently executed **BitMapOutput** statement.

Example:

```

;
; more colour program example
;
Screen 0,3           ;open an Intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0    ;borrow it's bitmap
BitMapOutput 0       ;send print statements to bitmap 0

For k=1 To 100      ;start of loop...

```

```
Locate Rnd(40),Rnd(DispHeight/8-7) ;random cursor position
Colour Rnd(7)+1 ;random colour
Print ** ;print a 'star'
Next ;end of loop...
```

MouseWait

See Also:

BitMapOutput, CursX, CursY

Function: **Cursx**

Syntax: **CursX**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

When using **BitMapOutput** to render text to a bitmap, **CursX** may be used to find the horizontal character position at which the next character **Printed** will appear.
CursX will reflect the cursor position of the bitmap specified in the most recently executed **BitMapOutput** statement.

Example:

```
; cursx program example
;
Screen 0,3      ;open an Intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0 ;find it's bitmap
BitMapOutput 0    ;send Print statements there...
Locate 0,2        ;position bitmap cursor

For k=1 To 16    ;start a loop...

  While k>CursX  ;some trickery!
    Print **
    Wend

  NPrint ""       ;print a newline

Next

MouseWait
```

See Also:

BitMapOutput, CursY, Locate

Statement: CursY

Syntax: CursY

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

When using **BitMapOutput** to render text to a bitmap, **CursY** may be used to find the vertical character position at which the next character **Printed** will appear.

CursY will reflect the cursor position of the bitmap specified in the most recently executed **BitMapOutput** statement.

See Also:

BitMapOutput, **CursX**, **Locate**

Statement: BitMapInput

Syntax: BitMapInput

Modes: Blitz

Description:

BitMapInput is a special command designed to allow you to use **Edit\$** and **Edit** in Blitz mode.

To work properly, a **BlitzKeys On** must have been executed before **BitMapInput**. A **BitMapOutput** must also be executed before any **Edit\$** or **Edit** commands are encountered.

Example:

```

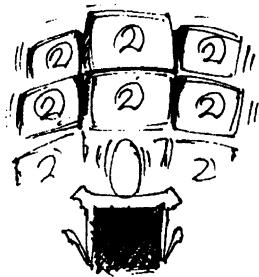
;
; bitmap input program example
;
Screen 0,3 ;open an Intuition screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0 ;find it's bitmap
BitMapOutput 0 ;send Print statements there
BLITZ ;go into the infamous BLITZ mode!
BlitzKeys On ;turn on blitz mode keyboard reading.
BitMapInput ;get input from bitmap
Locate 0,2 ;position cursor
a$=Edit$("Type Something!",40) ;get some input

```

See Also:

BitMapOutput, **BlitzKeys**

BLICZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL



24. Screens

The following section covers the Blitz 2 commands that let you open and control Intuition based Screen objects.

Statement: Screen

Syntax: **Screen** *Screen#,Mode[,Title\$]*
 or **Screen** *Screen#,X,Y,Width,Height,Viewmode,Title\$,Dopen,Bopen[,BitMap#]*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Screen will open an Intuition screen. There are 2 formats of the screen command, a quick format, and a long format.

The quick format of the **Screen** commands involves 3 parameters - *Screen#*, *Mode* and an optional *Title\$*.

Screen# specifies the screen object to create.

Mode specifies how many bitplanes the screen is to have, and should be in the range 1 through 6. Adding 8 to *Mode* will cause a hi-res screen to be opened, as opposed to the default lo-res screen. A hi-res screen may only have from 1 to 4 bitplanes. Adding 16 to *Mode* will cause an interlaced screen to be opened.

Title\$ allows you to add a title to the screen.

The long format of **Screen** gives you much more control over how the screen is opened.

Statement: ShowScreen

Syntax: **ShowScreen** *Screen#*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

ShowScreen will cause the specified screen object to be moved to the front of the display.

Statement: WbToScreen

Syntax: **WbToScreen Screen#**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WbToScreen will assign the Workbench screen a screen object number. This allows you to perform any of the functions that you would normally do own your own screens, on the Workbench screen. It's main usage is to allow you to open windows on the Workbench screen.

After execution, the Workbench screen will become the currently used screen.

Example:

```
; open a window on the workbench example program
;
WBenchToFront_
WbToScreen 0      ;actually an OS call!
;pick up workbench screen!
;
Window 0,2,1,600,180,15,"A Window on the WorkBench screen",0,1
Print "Click the right mouse button to quit"
While Joyb(0)<>2:Wend
WBenchToBack_
```

See Also:

FindScreen

Statement: FindScreen

Syntax: **FindScreen Screen#[, Title\$]**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

This command will find a screen and give it an object number so it can be referenced in your programs. If *Title\$* is not specified, then the foremost screen is found and given the object number *Screen#*. If the *Title\$* argument is specified, then a screen will be searched for that has this name.

After execution, the found screen will automatically become the currently used screen.

Example:

```
;
; open a window on the front screen example program
;
FindScreen 0      ;get frontmost screen
Window 0,0,0,100,100,0,"Our window",0,1      ;open window
MouseWait
```

See Also:

WBToScreen

Statement: LoadScreen

Syntax: LoadScreen *Screen#*,*Filename\$*[,*Palette#*]

Modes: Amiga

Description:

LoadScreen loads an IFF ILBM picture into the screen object specified by *Screen#*. The file that is loaded is specified by *Filename\$*.

You can also choose to load in the colour palette for the screen, by specifying the optional *Palette#*. This value is the object number of the palette you want the pictures colours to be loaded into. For the colours to be used on your screen, you will have to use the **Use Palette** statement.

Example:

```
;  
; loadscreen example program  
;  
Screen 0,3,"Click LMB to quit"           ;open an intuition screen  
LoadScreen 0,"TestScreen320x200x3",0      ;load an IFF ILBM pic.  
Use Palette 0                            ;use it's palette  
MouseWait
```

See Also:

SaveScreen

Statement: SaveScreen

Syntax: SaveScreen *Screen#*,*Filename\$*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

SaveScreen will save a screen to disk as an IFF ILBM file. The screen you wish to save is specified by the *Screen#*, and the name of the file you to create is specified by *Filename\$*.

Example:

```
;  
; draw, save and then load screen example program  
;  
Screen 0,3                  ;open Intuition screen.  
ScreensBitMap 0,0          ;pinch it's bitmap  
BitMapOutput 0            ;send Print statements to screen's bitmap  
Print "Draw on screen with LMB"  
Print "Press RMB to save picture as file RAM:picture"
```

```
While JB<>2           ;wait for RMB
  JB=Joyb(0)
  If JB=1 Then Plot $MouseX,$MouseY,2
Wend

Print "Saving the screen"
SaveScreen 0,"ram:picture"      ;save the screen
Cls                           ;clear bitmap (will affect screen)
Print "Press LMB to load it back in"
MouseWait
LoadScreen 0,"ram:picture",0    ;load back in.
Print "Press LMB to quit"
MouseWait
```

See Also:

LoadScreen

Function: **\$MouseX**

Syntax: **\$MouseX**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

\$MouseX returns the horizontal position of the mouse relative to the left edge of the currently used screen.

Example:

```
; 
; smousex&y program example program
;
Screen 0,2                  ;open a simple screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0             ;grab it's bitmap
BitMapOutput 0                ;send Print to bitmap
Print "Click LMB to quit"

While Joyb(0)=0               ;while no Mouse buttons pressed...
  Locate 0,1
  Print $MouseX," ",$MouseY   ;position bitmap cursor
  ;print X&Y of mouse
Wend
```

See Also:

\$MouseY;

Function: **SMouseY**

Syntax: **SMouseY**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

SMouseY returns the vertical position of the mouse relative to the top of the current screen.

See Also:

SMouseX

Function: **ViewPort**

Syntax: **ViewPort(Screen#)**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

The **ViewPort** function returns the location of the specified screens ViewPort. The ViewPort address can be used with graphics.library commands and the like.

See Also:

RastPort

Statement: **ScreenPens**

Syntax: **ScreenPens (active text, inactive text, hilight, shadow, active fill, gadget fill)**

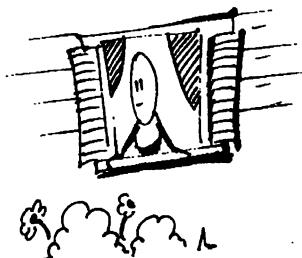
Modes: Amiga

Description:

ScreenPens configures the 10 default pens used for system gadgets in WorkBench 2.0. Any Screens opened after a **ScreenPens** statement will use the pens defined.

This command will have no affect when used with Workbench 1.3 or earlier.

BASIC E REFERENCE MANUAL



25. Windows

Windows are basically separate areas of a screen that are used for displaying information. These areas are independent, so if you write on one window, you will not write all over another, even if it is on top of the one you are writing on.

Windows must always appear within an Intuition screen of some kind, be it the Workbench screen, or your own custom screen.

To efficiently handle windows, the following steps are recommended:

- 1) Set up a screen of some kind, using either **Screen** or **WBToScreen**
- 2) Open any windows you require on the screen
- 3) Use **WaitEvent** to detect any user activity in any of the windows
- 4) Decide what to do with the event, do it, then go back to step 3

Statement: Window

Syntax: **Window** *Window#,X,Y,Width,Height,Flags,Title\$,Dpen,Bpen[,GadgetList#]*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Window opens an Intuition window on the currently used screen. *Window#* is a unique object number for the new window. *X* and *Y* refer to the offset from the top left of the screen the window is to appear at. *Width* and *Height* are the size of the window in pixels.

Flags are the special window flags that a window can have when opened. These flags allow for the inclusion of a sizing gadget, dragbar and many other things. The flags are listed as followed, with their corresponding values. To select more than one of these flags, they must be logically Or'd together using the 'l' operator.

For example, to open a window with dragbar and sizing gadget which is active once opened, you would specify a *Flags* parameter of \$1l \$2l \$1000.

Title\$ is a BASIC string, either a constant or a variable, that you want to be the title of the window. *Dpen* is the colour of the detail pen of the window. This colour is used for the window title.

BPen is the block pen of the window. This pen is used for things like the border around the edge of the window.

The optional *GadgetList#* is the number of a gadgetlist object you may want attached to the window.

After the window has opened, it will become the currently used window.

Window Flag	Value	Description
WINDOWSIZING	\$0001	Attaches sizing gadget to bottom right corner of window and allows it to be sized.
WINDOWDRAG	\$0002	Allows window to be dragged with the mouse by its title bar.
WINDOWDEPTH	\$0004	Lets windows be pushed behind or pulled in front of other windows.
WINDOWCLOSE	\$0008	Attaches a closegadget to the upper left corner of the window.
SIZEBRIGHT	\$0010	With GIMMEZEROZERO and WINDOWSIZING set, this will leave the right hand margin, the width of the sizing gadget, clear, and any drawing to the window will not extend over this right margin.
SIZEBBOTTOM	\$0020	Same as SIZEBRIGHT except it leaves a margin at the bottom of the window, the width of the sizing gadget.
BACKDROP	\$0100	This opens the window behind any other window that is already opened. It cannot have the WINDOWDEPTH flag set also, as the window is intended to stay behind all others.
GIMMEZEROZERO	\$0400	This flag keeps the windows border separate from the rest of the windows area. Any drawing on the window, extending to the borders, will not overwrite the border. NOTE: Although convenient, this does take up more memory than usual.
BORDERLESS	\$0800	Opens a window without any border on it at all.
ACTIVATE	\$1000	Activates the window once opened.

Example:

```

; window on workbench example program
;
WbToScreen 0           ;use workbench screen
WBenchToFront_         ;bring it to front.
Window 0,2,2,600,160,$1|$2|$4|$8,"A Window",0,1
MouseWait
WBenchToBack_

```

Statement: Use Window

Syntax: **Use Window** *Window#*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Use Window will cause the specified window object to become the currently used window. **Use Window** also automatically performs a **WindowInput** and **WindowOutput** on the specified window.

Example:

```

;
; use window example program
;
WBenchToFront_           ;From Intuition Library.
WbToScreen 0              ;Use Workbench as Screen #0.
Window 1,0,0,100,100,$f,"Window One",0,1
Window 2,100,100,100,100,$f,"Window Two",0,1  ;automatically 'used'
Print "This is in window two"
Use Window 0              ;use window 0
Print "This is in window one"
MouseWait

```

Statement: Free Window

Syntax: **Free Window** *Window#*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Free Window closes down a window. This window is now gone, and can not be accessed any more by any statements or functions. Once a window is closed, you may want to direct the input and output somewhere new, by calling **Use Window** on another window, **DefaultOutput/DefaultInput**, or by some other appropriate means. *Window#* is the window object number to close.

Example:

```

;
; free window example program
;
WBenchToFront_           ;bring workbench screen to front of view.
WbToScreen 0              ;use workbench as screen 0
Window 0,0,0,300,100,$f,"Click to say bye bye",0,1
MouseWait
Free Window 0

```

Statement: WindowInput

Syntax: **WindowInput** *Window#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

WindowInput will cause any future executions of the **Inkey\$**, **Edit\$** or **Edit** functions to receive their input as keystrokes from the specified window object.

WindowInput is automatically executed when either a window is opened, or **Use Window** is executed.

After a window is closed (using **Free Window**), remember to tell Blitz 2 to get it's input from

somewhere else useful (for example, using another **WindowInput** command) before executing another **Inkey\$**, **Edit\$** or **Edit** function.

See Also:

WindowOutput, **Window**, **Use Window**

Statement: WindowOutput

Syntax: **WindowOutput** *Window#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

WindowOutput will cause any future executions of either the **Print** or **NPrint** statements to send their output as text to the specified window object.

WindowOutput is automatically executed when either a window is opened, or **Use Window** is executed.

After a window is closed (using **Free Window**), remember to send output somewhere else useful (for example, using another **WindowOutput** command) before executing another **Print** or **NPrint** statement.

See Also:

WindowInput, **Window**, **Use Window**

Statement: DefaultIDCMP

Syntax: **DefaultIDCMP** *IDCMP_Flags*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

DefaultIDCMP allows you to set the IDCMP flags used when opening further windows. You can change the flags as often as you like, causing all of your windows to have their own set of IDCMP flags if you wish.

A window's IDCMP flags will affect the types of 'events' reportable by the window. Events are reported to a program by means of either the **WaitEvent** or **Event** functions.

To select more than one IDCMP Flag when using **DefaultIDCMP**, combine the separate flags together using the OR operator ('|').

Any windows opened before any **DefaultIDCMP** command is executed will be opened using an IDCMP flags setting of: \$2I \$4I \$8I \$20I \$40I \$100I \$200I \$400I \$40000I \$80000. This should be sufficient for most programs.

If you do use **DefaultIDCMP** for some reason, it is important to remember to include all flags necessary for the functioning of the program. For example, if you open a window which is to have menus attached to it, you MUST set the \$100 (menu selected) IDCMP flag, or else you will have no

way of telling when a menu has been selected.

Here is a table of possible events and their IDCMP flags:

IDCMP Flag	Event
\$2	Reported when a window has it's size changed.
\$4	Reported when a windows contents have been corrupted. This may mean a windows contents may need to be re-drawn.
\$8	Reported when either mouse button has been hit.
\$10	Reported when the mouse has been moved.
\$20	Reported when a gadget within a window has been pushed 'down'.
\$40	Reported when a gadget within a window has been 'released'.
\$100	Reported when a menu operation within a window has occurred.
\$200	Reported when the 'close' gadget of a window has been selected.
\$400	Reported when a keypress has been detected.
\$8000	Reported when a disk is inserted into a disk drive.
\$10000	Reported when a disk is removed from a disk drive.
\$40000	Reported when a window has been 'activated'.
\$80000	Reported when a window has been 'de-activated'.

Example:

```

;
; simple idcmp example program
;
Screen 0,2           ;simple screen

DefaultIDCMP $8      ;simple 'mouse buttons' IDCMP flag

Window 0,0,0,320,100,0,"Closes on mouseclick",0,1
Window 0,0,0,320,100,0,"Closes on mouseclick",0,1

DefaultIDCMP $400      ;simple 'key press' IDCMP flag

Window 1,0,100,320,100,0,"Closes on keypress",0,1

ev.l=WaitEvent

If ev=$8 Then Free Window 0 Else Free Window 1 ;close appropriate window

WaitEvent

```

Statement: AddIDCMP

Syntax: **AddIDCMP** /IDCMP_Flags

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

AddIDCMP allows you to 'add in' IDCMP flags to the IDCMP flags selected by **DefaultIDCMP**. Please refer to **DefaultIDCMP** for a thorough discussion of IDCMP flags.

Example:

```
; addidcmp example program
;
Screen 0,3
Window 0,0,0,320,DispHeight,$100f,"My Window",1,2

Repeat           ;repeat...
  ev.l=WaitEvent
  If ev=$10      ;has mmouse moved?
    If WCursY+8>=InnerHeight Then InnerCIs:WLocate 0,0
      NPrint "Mouse moved!"
    Endif
  Until ev=512   ;until window closed
```

See Also:

DefaultIDCMP, **SubIDCMP**

Statement: **SubIDCMP**

Syntax: **SubIDCMP IDCMP_Flags**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SubIDCMP allows you to 'subtract out' IDCMP flags from the IDCMP flags selected by **DefaultIDCMP**. Please refer to **DefaultIDCMP** for a thorough discussion of IDCMP flags.

See Also:

DefaultIDCMP, **AddIDCMP**

Statement/Function: **WaitEvent**

Syntax: **WaitEvent**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WaitEvent will halt program excution until an Intuition event has been received. This event must be one that satisfies the IDCMP flags of any open windows. If used as a function, **WaitEvent** returns the IDCMP flag of the event (please refer to **DefaultIDCMP** for a table of possible IDCMP flags). If used as a statement, you have no way of telling what event occurred.

You may find the window object number that caused the event using the **EventWindow** function.

In the case of events concerning gadgets or menus, further functions are available to detect which gadget or menu was played with.

In the case of mouse button events, the **MButtons** function may be used to discover exactly which mouse button has been hit.

IMPORTANT NOTE: If you are assigning the result of **WaitEvent** to a variable, MAKE SURE that the variable is a long type variable. For example: MyEvent.l=WaitEvent

Example:

```

;
; wait event example program
;
Screen 0,2          ;open a simple screen
Window 0,0,0,320,100,0,"Click in me to close",0,1
ev.l=WaitEvent        ;wait for an event.

```

See Also:

Event, GadgetHit, MenuHit, ItemHit, SubHit, EventWindow

Function: Event

Statement: **Event**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Event works similarly to **WaitEvent** in that it returns the IDCMP flag of any outstanding windows events. However, **Event** will NOT cause program flow to halt. Instead, if no event has occurred, **Event** will return 0.

Example:

```

;
; key press idcmp example program
;
Screen 0,3          ;open a simple screen
ScreensBitMap 0,0      ;pick up it's bitmap
DefaultIDCMP $400     ;set 'key press' IDCMP for window

Window 0,0,0,320,200,$1000,"Press a key to exit",0,1

While Event=0          ;while no event...
  Circlef Rnd(300),Rnd(200),Rnd(100),Rnd(8)
Wend

```

See Also:

WaitEvent

Function: EventWindow

Syntax: **EventWindow**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

EventWindow may be used to determine in which window the most recent window event occurred. Window events are detected by use of either the **WaitEvent** or **Event** commands.

EventWindow return the window object number in which the most recent window event occurred.

Example:

```
; EventWindow example program NOTE: hit 'Esc' to exit this example!
;
Screen 0,3           ;open a screen and 4 windows
Window 0,0,0,160,100,$100f,"Window 0",1,2
Window 1,160,0,160,100,$100f,"Window 1",1,2
Window 2,0,100,160,100,$100f,"Window 2",1,2
Window 3,160,100,160,100,$100f,"Window 3",1,2

Repeat
  ev.l=WaitEvent      ;wait for an event
  Use Window lw       ;use LAST event window
  InnerCls            ;cls inside area of window
  Use Window EventWindow ;use THIS event window
  WLocate 0,0          ;text cursor to top left...
  Print "Event here!"   ;tell 'em about it
  lw=EventWindow        ;make THIS window LAST window
Until Inkey$=Chr$(27)    ;escape to quit!
```

See Also:

WaitEvent, Event

Statements: FlushEvents

Syntax: **FlushEvents** [*IDCMP_Flag*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

When window events occur in Blitz 2, they are automatically 'queued' for you. This means that if your program is tied up processing one window event while others are being created, you wont miss out on anything. Any events which may have occurred between executions of **WaitEvent** or **Event** will be stored in a queue for later use. However, there may be situations where you want to ignore this backlog of events. This is what **FlushEvents** is for.

Executing **FlushEvents** with no parameters will completely clear Blitz 2's internal event queue, leaving you with no outstanding events. Supplying an *IDCMP_Flag* parameter will only clear events of the specified type from the event queue.

See Also:

WaitEvent, **Event**

Function: GadgetHit

Syntax: GadgetHit

Modes: Amiga

Description:

GadgetHit returns the identification number of the gadget that caused the most recent 'gadget pushed' or 'gadget released' event.

As gadgets in different windows may possibly possess the same identification numbers, you may also need to use **EventWindow** to tell exactly which gadget was hit.

Example:

```

;
; simple gadget list example program using gadget hit
;
Screen 0,3 ;simple Intuition screen
TextGadget 0,20,20,0,1,"Click here" ;make up a gadgetlist...
TextGadget 0,20,40,0,2,"Or in here" ;...
TextGadget 0,20,60,0,3,"Quit here" ;...

```

Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Window and gadgets",0,1,0

```

Repeat
  Repeat
    ev.l=WaitEvent ;wait for an event.
    Until ev=$40 ;but only 'gadget released'
    If GadgetHit=3 Then End ;if gadget was #3, then end
  Forever

```

See Also:

WaitEvent, **Event**

Function: MenuHit

Syntax: MenuHit

Modes: Amiga

Description:

MenuHit returns the identification number of the menu that caused the last menu event. As with gadgets, you can have different menus for different windows with the same identification number. Therefore you may also need to use **EventWindow** to find which window caused the event.

If no menus have yet been selected, **Menuhit** will return -1.

Example:

```
; simple menu example program
;
Screen 0,3           ;open a simple Intuition screen
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Window with menus",0,1
MenuColour 2          ;change menu rendering pens
MenuTitle 0,0,"Menus"   ;create a simple menu
MenuItem 0,0,0,0,"Item"    ;with only one item in it.
MenuItem 0,0,0,1,"Quit"    ;and a quit item!
SetMenu 0              ;add it to window
While MenuHit<>0
  ev.l=WaitEvent
Wend
```

See Also:

WaitEvent, **Event**, **ItemHit**, **SubHit**

Function: **ItemHit**

Syntax: **ItemHit**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

ItemHit returns the identification number of the menu item that caused the last menu event.

Example:

```
; exit on quit menu program example
;
Screen 0,3           ;open a simple screen
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Window with menus",0,1
MenuColour 2          ;change menu drawing pen
MenuTitle 0,0,"Menus"   ;title of menu 0
MenuItem 0,0,0,0,"First"    ;item 0...
MenuItem 0,0,0,1,"Second"   ;item 1...
MenuItem 0,0,0,2,"Third"    ;item 2...
MenuItem 0,0,0,3,"Quit"     ;item 3...
SetMenu 0              ;attach menulist to window

Repeat
  WaitEvent
  Until ItemHit=3      ;quit when 'Quit' selected.
```

See Also:

WaitEvent, Event, MenuHit, SubHit

Function: **SubHit**

Syntax: **SubHit**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

SubHit returns the identification number of the the menu submenu that caused the last menu event. If no submenu was selected, **SubHit** will return -1.

Example:

```

;
; subitems program example
;
Screen 0,3           ;open a simple screen
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Window with menus",0,1

MenuColour 2          ;set menu drawing pens
MenuTitle 0,0,"Menus" ;menu title...
MenuItem 0,0,0,0,"More "+Chr$(187) ;item 0.
SubMenu 0,0,0,0,"Quit"   ;sub item 0
SetMenu 0              ;attach menulist

Repeat
  WaitEvent
Until SubHit=0

```

See Also:

WaitEvent, Event, MenuHit, ItemHit

Function: **MButtons**

Syntax: **MButtons**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

MButtons returns the codes for the mouse buttons that caused the most recent 'mouse buttons' event. If menus have been turned off using **Menus Off**, then the right mouse button will also register an event and can be read with **MButtons**.

The following are the values returned for the buttons by **MButtons**.

Button	Down	Up
Left	1	5
Right	2	6

Example:

```

;
; mbbuttons program example
;
Screen 0,3           ;open a simple Intuition window

Window 0,0,0,320,200,$1000,"Click right button to exit",0,1

Repeat
  WaitEvent
  Until MButtons=6

```

See Also:

WaitEvent, **Event**

Function : RawKey

Syntax: **RawKey**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

RawKey returns the raw key code of a key that caused the most recent 'key press' event.

Example:

```

;
; qualifiers and keyboard events example
;
Screen 0,3

Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Type a control character to quit",0,1

While (Qualifier AND $8) = 0
  ev=WaitEvent
  WLocate 0,0
  a$=Inkey$
  Print Hex$(RawKey)
Wend

```

See Also:

WaitEvent, **Event**, **Qualifier**, **Inkey\$**

Function: Qualifier

Syntax: **Qualifier**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Qualifier will return the qualifier of the last key that caused a 'key press' event to occur. A qualifier is a key which alters the meaning of other keys; for example the 'shift' keys. Here is a table of qualifier values and their equivalent keys.

Key	Left	Right
UnQualified	\$8000	\$8000
Shift	\$8001	\$8002
Caps Lock Down	\$8004	\$8004
Control	\$8008	\$8008
Alternate	\$8010	\$8020
Amiga	\$8040	\$8080

A combination of values may occur, if more than one qualifier key is being held down. The way to filter out the qualifiers that you want is by using the logical AND operator.

See Also:

WaitEvent, **Event**, **RawKey**, **Inkey\$**

Statement: WPlot

Syntax: **WPlot X,Y,Colour**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WPlot plots a pixel in the currently used window at the coordinates *X,Y* in the colour specified by *Colour*.

Example:

```
;
; wplot example
;
Screen 0,3
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"",0,1

For t=1 To 40
  For g=1 To 40
    WPlot t,g,2
  Next
Next

MouseWait
```

Statement: **WBox**

Syntax: **WBox X1,Y1,X2,Y2,Colour**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WBox draws a solid rectangle in the currently used window. The upper left hand coordinates of the box are specified with the *X1* and *Y1* values, and the bottom right hand corner of the box is specified by the values *X2* and *Y2*.

Example:

```
; wbox example program
;
Screen 0,3
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Boxes",0,1

For t=1 To 1000
  WBox Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(300),Rnd(200),Rnd(8)
Next

MouseWait
```

Statement: **WCircle**

Syntax: **WCircle X,Y,Radius,Colour**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WCircle allows you to draw a circle in the currently used window. You specify the centre of the circle with the coordinates *X*,*Y*. The *Radius* value specifies the radius of the circle you want to draw. The last value, *Colour* specifies what colour the circle will be drawn in.

Example:

```
; wcircle example program
;
Screen 0,3
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Circles",0,1

For t=1 To 1000
  WCircle Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(300),Rnd(8)
Next

MouseWait
```

Statement: **WEllipse**

Syntax: **WEllipse X,Y,X Radius,Y Radius,Colour**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WEllipse draws an ellipse in the currently used window. You specify the centre of the ellipse with the coordinates *X, Y*. *X Radius* specifies the horizontal radius of the ellipse, *Y Radius* the vertical radius.

Colour refers to the colour in which to draw the ellipse.

Example:

```

;
; wellipse example program
;
Screen 0,3
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Ellipses",0,1

For t=1 To 1000
  WEllipse Rnd(320),Rnd(200),Rnd(300),Rnd(300),Rnd(8)
Next

MouseWait

```

Statement: **WLine**

Syntax: **WLine X1,Y1,X2,Y2[Xn, Yn..],Colour**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Wline allows you to draw a line or a series of lines into the currently used window. The first two sets of coordinates *X1, Y1, X2, Y2*, specify the start and end points of the initial line. Any coordinates specified after these initial two, will be the end points of another line going from the last set of end points, to this set. *Colour* is the colour of the line(s) that are to be drawn.

Example:

```

;
; wline example program
;
Screen 0,3
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"A Polygon",0,1
Wline 150,10,200,60,150,110,100,60,160,10,3
MouseWait
End

```

Statement: WCls

Syntax: **WCls** [*Colour*]

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WCls will clear the currently used window to colour 0, or *colour* is specified, then it will be cleared to this colour. If the current window was not opened with the GIMMEZEROZERO flag set, then this statement will clear any border or title bar that the window has. The **InnerCls** statement should be used to avoid these side effects..

Example:

```
;  
; wcls example  
;  
Screen 0,3  
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$400,"Window Cls",0,1  
WCls 2  
MouseWait
```

See Also:

InnerCls

Statement: InnerCls

Syntax: **InnerCls** [*Colour*]

Modes: Amiga

Description:

InnerCls will clear only the inner portion of the currently used window. It will not clear the titlebar or borders as **Cls** would do if your window was not opened with the GIMMEZEROZERO flag set. If *colour* is specified, then that colour will be used to clear the window.

Example:

```
;  
; innercls example  
;  
Screen 0,3  
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Not a GIMMEZEROZERO window",0,1  
InnerCls 2  
MouseWait
```

See Also:

WCls

Statement: WScroll

Syntax: **WScroll X1,Y1,X2,Y2,Delta X,Delta Y**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WScroll will cause a rectangular area of the currently used window to be moved or 'scrolled'. *X1* and *Y1* specify the top left location of the rectangle, *X2* and *Y2* the bottom right. The *Delta* parameters determine how far to move the area. Positive values move the area right/down, while negative values move the area left/up.

Statement: Cursor

Syntax: **Cursor Thickness**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Cursor will set the style of cursor that appears when editing strings or numbers with the **Edit\$** or **Edit** functions. If *Thickness* is less than 0, then a block cursor will be used. If the *Thickness* is greater than 0, then an underline *Thickness* pixels high will be used.

Example:

```
;
; cursor example
;
Screen 0,3 ;open a simple screen
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Cursor types",0,1 ;and a window
Print "This is a block cursor." ;show a block cursor
a$=Edit$("Hello",10)
Cursor 1 ;change cursor to underline
Print "This is an underline one."
a$=Edit$("Hello",10)
End
```

Function: Editat

Syntax: **Editat**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

After executing an **Edit\$** or **Edit** function, **Editat** may be used to determine the horizontal character position of the cursor at the time the function was exited.

Through the use of **Editat**, **EditExit**, **EditFrom** and **Edit\$**, simple full screen editors may be put together.

Example:

```
; cursor example with edit$  
;  
Screen 0,3 ;open a simple screen  
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Cursor types",0,1 ;and a window  
Print "This is a block cursor."  
a$=Edit$("Hello",10) ;show a block cursor  
Cursor 1 ;change cursor to underline  
Print "This is an underline one."  
a$=Edit$("Hello",10)  
End
```

See Also:

EditFrom, Edit\$, Edit

Statement: **EditFrom**

Syntax: **EditFrom [Characterpos]**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

EditFrom allows you to control how the **Edit\$** and **Edit** functions operate when used within windows.

If a *Characterpos* parameter is specified, then the next time an edit function is executed, editting will commence at the specified character position (0 being the first character position).

Also, editting may be terminated not just by the use of the 'return' key, but also by any non printable character (for example, 'up arrow' or 'Esc') or a window event. When used in conjunction with **Editat** and **EditExit**, this allows you to put together simple full screen editors.

If *Characterpos* is omitted, **Edit\$** and **Edit** return to normal - editting always beginning at character position 0, and 'return' being the only way to exit.

Example:

```
;  
:a simple full screen editor.  
;  
Dim lines$(20) ;enough for 20 lines  
Screen 0,0,0,320,172,2,0,"Blitz Edit - Hit 'ESC' to Quit",1,2  
Window 0,0,0,320,172,$1900,"",2,1  
y=1 ;starting line  
WLocate 0,12 ;prepare to number lines  
Format "#"  
  
For k=1 To 20 ;loop to print line numbers.  
  NPrint k,":  
Next
```

Repeat

Repeat ;first, we should handle all events (gadgets, menus etc)
ev.l=Event
Select ev ;this is where actual handling should take place.

End Select
Until ev=0 ;until no more events to handle

WLocate 24,y*8+4 ;now, prepare to edit 'current' line
EditFrom x ;start at character position 'x'
lines\$(y)=Edit\$(lines\$(y),37)
x>Editat ;character position at time of 'edit exit'

Select EditExit ;How did they exit?
Case 13 ;Return?
x=0 ;back to left of line
If y<20 Then y+1 ;and possibly down a line
Case 28 ;Up arrow?
If y>1 Then y-1 ;possibly up a line
Case 29 ;Down arrow?
If y<20 Then y+1 ;possibly down a line
End Select

Until EditExit=27 ;until 'Escape' hit

See Also:

Editat, EditExit, Edit\$, Edit

Function: **EditExit**

Syntax: **EditExit**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

EditExit returns the ASCII value of the character that was used to exit a window based **Edit\$** or **Edit** function. You can only exit the edit functions with keypresses other than 'return' if **EditFrom** has been executed prior to the edit call.

Example:

```
;
; edit exit example
;
Screen 0,2 ;open a simple screen
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$1000,"Press ESCAPE to quit",0,1
Repeat
  FlushEvents ;to get rid of outstanding window events.
  WLocate 0,0 ;to top left...
  EditFrom Editat ;edit from last quit position
  a$=Edit$(a$,38)
```

Until EditExit=27

See Also:

EditFrom, EditAt, Edit\$, Edit

Statement: WindowFont

Syntax: **WindowFont IntuiFont#**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WindowFont sets the font for the currently used window. Any further printing to this window will be in the specified font. *IntuiFont#* specifies a previously initialized intuifont object created using **LoadFont**.

Example:

```
;  
; window font example  
;  
Screen 0,3 ;a simple screen and window...  
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$1000,"Groovy font",0,1  
LoadFont 0,"topaz.font",11 ;get into topaz 11  
WindowFont 0 ;set this as the font for the window  
Print "This is in Topaz 11" ;show the font  
MouseWait  
End
```

See Also:

LoadFont

Statement: WColour

Syntax: **WColour Foreground Colour[,Background Colour]**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WColour sets the foreground and background colour of printed text for the currently used window. Any further text printed on this window will be in these colours.

Example:

```
;  
; wcolour example  
;  
Screen 0,3 ;open Intuition screen and window..  
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$1000,"Colours",0,1
```

```

For T=1 To 7           ;foreground colour loop
  For G=1 To 7         ;background colour loop
    WColour T,G        ;set window colour
    Print "Wow! "      ;print some text...
  Next
  NPrint ""
Next

MouseWait
End

```

See Also:

WJam

Statement: **WJam**

Syntax: **WJam Jammode**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WJam sets the text drawing mode of the currently used window. These drawing modes allow you to do inverted, complemented and other types of graphics. The drawing modes can be OR'ed together to create a combination of them. Here are the different modes.

Mode	Value	Description
Jam1	0	This draws only the foreground colour and leaves the background transparent. Eg For the letter O, any empty space (inside and outside the letter) will be transparent.
Jam2	1	This draws both the foreground and background to the window. Eg With the letter O again, the O will be drawn, but any clear area (inside and outside) will be drawn in the current background colour.
Complement	2	This will exclusive or (XOR) the bits of the graphics. Eg Drawing on the same place with the same graphics will cause the original display to return.
Inversvid	4	This allows the display of inverse video characters. If used in conjunction with Jam2, it behaves like Jam2, but the foreground and background colours are exchanged.

Example:

```

;
; wjam examples
;
Screen 0,3           ;open Intuition screen and window..
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"DrawModes",0,1
Print "OverLapping characters" ;print some stuff in different modes
WJam 0

```

```
Print "Hello"
WLocate 0,0
Print "Bye"
WJam 1
Print "Overwriting characters"
Print "Hello"
WLocate 0,16
Print "Bye"
Print "Bye"
Print "Complemented characters disappear"
WJam 2
Print "Hello"
WLocate 0,32
Print "Hello"
WJam 4
Print "This is in inverse video"
MouseWait
End
```

See Also:

WColour

Statement: Activate

Syntax: **Activate Window#**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Activate will active the window specified by *Window#*.

Example:

```
; activate windows example
;
Screen 0,2
Window 0,0,0,320,100,0,"Window 1",0,1
Window 1,0,100,320,100,0,"Window 2",0,1
Activate 0
Print "Hello"
Activate 1
Print "Good Bye"
MouseWait
End
```

Statement: Menus

Syntax: **Menus On/Off**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

The **Menus** command may be used to turn ALL menus either on or off. Turning menus off may be useful if you wish to read the right mouse button.

Statement: WPointer

Syntax: **WPointer Shape#**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WPointer allows you to determine the mouse pointer imagery used in the currently used window. **Shape#** specifies an initialized shape object the pointer is to take it's appearance from, and must be of 2 bitplanes depth (4 colours).

Example:

```
;;
; wpointer example
;
Screen 0,2 ;Open a simple screen and window.
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$1000,"New Pointer",0,1
LoadShape 0,"TestPointer" ;load a shape.
WPointer 0 ;make it the pointer
MouseWait
```

Statement: WMove

Syntax: **WMove X,Y**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WMove will move the current window to a screen position specified by **X** and **Y**.

Example:

```
;;
; wmove example
;
Screen 0,2
Window 0,0,0,100,100,$1000,"Moving window!",0,1
```

For k=1 To 50

WMove k,k
Next

MouseWait

See Also:

WSize

Statement: **WSize**

Syntax: **WSize** *Width,Height*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WSize will alter the width and height of the current window to the values specified by *Width* and *Height*.

Example:

```
;  
; wsize example  
;  
Screen 0,2  
Window 0,0,0,10,10,$1000,"",0,1  
VWait 100  
WSize 320,100  
Print "Click Mouse to Quit"  
MouseWait
```

See Also:

WMove

Function: **WMouseX**

Syntax: **WMouseX**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WMouseX returns the horizontal x coordinate of the mouse relative to the left edge of the current window. If the current window was opened without the GIMMEZEROZERO flag set, then the left edge is taken as the left edge of the border around the window, otherwise, if GIMMEZEROZERO was set, then the left edge is taken from inside the window border.

Example:

```

; wmousex and wmousey example
;
Screen 0,2
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Window",0,1

While Joyb(0)=0
  WLocate 0,0
  Print WMouseX," ",WMouseY
Wend
```

See Also:

WMouseY

Function: **WMouseY**

Syntax: **WMouseY**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WMouseY returns the vertical y coordinate of the mouse relative to the top of the current window. If the current window was opened without the GIMMEZEROZERO flag set, then the top is taken as the top of the border around the window, otherwise, if GIMMEZEROZERO was set, then the top is taken from inside the window border.

See Also:

WMouseX

Function: **EMouseX**

Syntax: **EMouseX**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

EMouseX will return the horizontal position of the mouse pointer at the time the most recent window event occurred. Window events are detected using the **WaitEvent** or **Event** commands.

Example:

```

; emousex & y program example
;
Screen 0,3
ScreensBitMap 0,0
;
```

```
Repeat           ;repeat...
ev.l=WaitEvent   ;wait for a window event
If MButtons=1    ;if left mouse button down...
x=EMouseX:y=EMouseY ;grab mouse x and y at time of event
Repeat           ;repeat...
ev2.l=WaitEvent   ;wait for a window event
If ev2=$10        ;mouse moved?
  Wline x,y,EMouseX,EMouseY,1 ;join up a line...
  x=EMouseX:y=EMouseY ;grab new mouse x and y
EndIf
Until MButtons=5 ;until left button up
EndIf
Until ev=$200     ;until window closed.
```

See Also:

EMouseY, WMouseX, WMouseY, WaitEvent, Event

Function: **EMouseY**

Syntax: **EMouseY**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

EMouseY will return the vertical position of the mouse pointer at the time the most recent window event occurred. Window events are detected using the **WaitEvent** or **Event** commands.

See Also:

EMouseX, WMouseX, WMouseY, WaitEvent, Event

Function: **WCursX**

Syntax: **WCursX**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WCursX returns the horizontal location of the text cursor of the currently used window. The text cursor position may be set using **WLocate**.

Example:

```
; 
; wcursx example
;
Screen 0,2
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Window",0,1
For T=1 To 5
```

```

Print WCursX;" ";
Next
MouseWait
End

```

See Also:

WCursY, WLocate

Function: **WCursY**

Syntax: **WCursY**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WCursY returns the vertical location of the text cursor of the currently used window. The text cursor position may be set using **WLocate**.

Example:

```

;
; wcursy example
;
Screen 0,2
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"Window",0,1
For T=1 To 5
    NPrint WCursY
Next
MouseWait
End

```

See Also:

WCursX, WLocate

Statement: **WLocate**

Syntax: **WLocate X,Y**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

WLocate is used to set the text cursor position within the currently used window. *X* and *Y* are both specified in pixels as offsets from the top left of the window. Each window has its own text cursor position, therefore changing the text cursor position of one window will not affect any other window's text cursor position.

See Also:

WCursx, WCursy

Function: **WindowX**

Syntax: **WindowX**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WindowX returns the horizontal pixel location of the top left corner of the currently used window, relative to the screen the window appears in.

Example:

```
; windowx example
;
Screen 0,2
Window 0,10,0,300,200,0,"Window",0,1
Print WindowX
MouseWait
End
```

See Also:

WindowY, WindowWidth, WindowHeight

Function: **WindowY**

Syntax: **WindowY**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WindowY returns the vertical pixel location of the top left corner of the currently used window, relative to the screen the window appears in.

Example:

```
; windowy example program
;
Screen 0,2
Window 0,0,10,320,180,0,"Window",0,1
Print WindowY
MouseWait
```

See Also:

WindowX, WindowWidth, WindowHeight

Function: WindowWidth

Syntax: **WindowWidth**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WindowWidth returns the pixel width of the currently used window.

Example:

```
Screen 0,2
Window 0,0,0,320,200,0,"WindowWidth",0,1
Print WindowWidth
MouseWait
End
```

See Also:

WindowX, **WindowY**, **WindowHeight**

Statement: WindowHeight

Syntax: **WindowHeight**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WindowHeight returns the pixel height of the currently used window.

See Also:

WindowX, **WindowY**, **WindowWidth**

Function: InnerWidth

Syntax: **InnerWidth**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

InnerWidth returns the pixel width of the area inside the border of the currently used window.

See Also:

InnerHeight

Function: **InnerHeight**

Syntax: **InnerHeight**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

InnerHeight returns the pixel height of the area inside the border of the currently used window.

See Also:

InnerWidth

Function: **WTopOff**

Syntax: **WTopOff**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WTopOff returns the number of pixels between the top of the current window border and the inside of the window.

See Also:

WLeftOff

Function: **WLeftOff**

Syntax: **WLeftOff**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

WLeftOff returns the number of pixels between the left edge of the current window border and the inside of the window.

Statement: **SizeLimits**

Syntax: **SizeLimits Min Width,Min Height,Max Width,Max Height**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

SizeLimits sets the limits that any new windows can be sized to with the sizing gadget. After calling this statement, any new windows will have these limits imposed on them.

Example:

```
;  
; sizelimits program example  
;  
Screen 0,2 ;A simple screen  
SizeLimits 20,20,150,150 ;set limits for windows  
Window 0,0,0,100,100,15,"SizeLimits",0,1  
Print "Click RMB"  
Print "to quit"  
While Joyb(0)<>2  
Wend
```

Function: **RastPort**

Syntax: **RastPort** (*Winodw#*)

Modes: Amiga

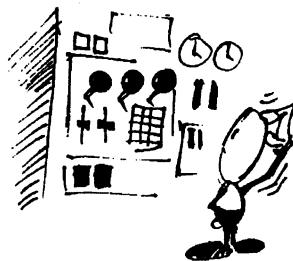
Description:

RastPort returns the specified Window's RastPort address. Many commands in the graphics.library and the like require a RastPort as a parameter.

See Also:

ViewPort

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL



26. Gadgets

Blitz 2 provides extensive support for the creation and use of Intuition gadgets. This is done through the use of GadgetList objects. Each gadgetlist may contain one or more of the many types of available gadgets, and may be attached to a window when that window is opened using the **Window** command.

The following is a table of the gadget flags and the gadget types which they are relevant to:

Bit #	Meaning	Text	String	Prop	Shape
0	Toggle On/Off	yes	no	no	yes
1	Relative to Right Side of Window	yes	yes	yes	yes
2	Relative to Bottom of Window	yes	yes	yes	yes
3	Size Relative to Width of Window	no	no	yes	no
4	Size Relative to Height of Window	no	no	yes	no
5	Box Select	yes	yes	yes	yes
6	Prop Gadget has Horizontal Movement	no	no	yes	no
7	Prop Gadget Has Vertical Movement	no	no	yes	no
8	No Border around Prop Gadget Container	no	no	yes	no

Note:

If Relative Right is set the gadgets X should be negative, as should it's Y if Relative to Bottom is set.

When relative Width or Height flags are set negative Width and/or Height parameters should be specified as Intuition calculates actual width as WindowWidth+GadgetWidth as it does height when relative size flags are set.

Statement: **TextGadget**

Syntax: **TextGadget GadgetList#,X,Y,Flags,Id,Text\$**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **TextGadget** command adds a text gadget to a gadgetlist. A text gadget is the simplest type of gadget consisting of a sequence of characters optionally surrounded by a border.

Flags should be selected from the table at the start of the chapter.

Boolean gadgets are the simplest type of gadget available. Boolean gadgets are 'off' until the program user clicks on them with the mouse, which turns them 'on'. When the mouse button is released, these gadgets revert back to their 'off' state. Boolean gadgets are most often used for 'OK' or 'CANCEL' type gadgets.

Toggle gadgets differ in that each time they are clicked on they change their state between 'on' and 'off'. For example, clicking on a toggle gadget which is 'on' will cause the gadget to be turned 'off', and vice versa.

X and Y specify where in the window the gadget is to appear. Depending upon the *Flags* setting, gadgets may be positioned relative to any of the 4 window edges. If a gadget is to be positioned relative to either the right or bottom edge of a window, the appropriate X or Y parameter should be negative.

Id is an identification value to be attached to this gadget. All gadgets in a gadgetlist should have unique *Id* numbers, allowing you to detect which gadget has been selected. *Id* may be any positive, non-zero number.

Text\$ is the actual text you want the gadget to contain.

Example:

```
; :textgadget example
;
TextGadget 0.8,180,0,1," EXIT " ;add to gadgetlist 0
TextGadget 0,216,180,0,2," STAY HERE " ;add this too
Screen 0,3 ;open screen
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$100f,"GADGETS!",1,2,0
Repeat ;wait for 'EXIT'
Until WaitEvent=64 AND GadgetHit=1
```

See Also:

ShapeGadget, **StringGadget**, **PropGadget**

Statement: **GadgetPens**

Syntax: **GadgetPens** *Foreground Colour*[,*Background Colour*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

GadgetPens determines the text colours used when text gadgets are created using the **TextGadget** command. The default values used for gadget colours are a foreground colour of 1, and a background colour of 0.

Example:

```
; :gadget pens example program
;
BorderPens 3,3 ;change gadget border colours
```

```

TextGadget 0,8,DispHeight-16,0,1,"OK"
GadgetPens 2           ;change gadget pens
TextGadget 0,320-88,DispHeight-16,0,2,"CANCEL"
;
Screen 0,3          ;open a screen
RGB 1,0,15,0         ;set some colours
RGB 2,15,0,0
RGB 3,15,15,15
;
Window 0,0,0,320,DispHeight,$100f,"My Window",0,0,0
;
Repeat             ;wait for gadget hit...
Until WaitEvent=64

```

See Also:

GadgetJam

Statement: **GadgetJam**

Syntax: **GadgetJam Jammode**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

GadgetJam allows you to determine the text rendering method used when gadgets are created using the **TextGadget** command. Please refer to the **WJam** command in the windows chapter for a full description of jam modes available.

See Also:

GadgetPens

Statement: **ShapeGadget**

Syntax: **ShapeGadget GadgetList#,X,Y,Flags,Id,Shape#**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **ShapeGadget** command allows you to create gadgets with graphic imagery. The *Shape#* parameter refers to a shape object containing the graphics you want the gadget to contain.

All other parameters are identical to those in **TextGadget**.

Example:

```

;
; shapegadget example
;

```

```
Screen 0.3
ScreensBitMap 0,0

For k=7 To 1 Step -1
Circlef 16,16,k*2,k
Next
GetaShape 0,0,32,32

ShapeGadget 0,148,50,0,1,0
TextGadget 0,140,180,0,2," EXIT "
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$100f,"More Gadgets!",1,2,0

Repeat
Until WaitEvent=64 AND GadgetHit=2
```

See Also:

[TextGadget](#), [StringGadget](#), [PropGadget](#)

Statement: Toggle

Syntax: **Toggle** *GadgetList#*,*Id*,*On/Off*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Toggle allows you to 'turn on' or 'turn off' a text or shape gadget created with a 'toggle' flags setting.

Toggle will not affect the gadget's imagery if it is already displayed.

See Also:

[TextGadget](#)

Statement: StringGadget

Syntax: **StringGadget** *GadgetList#*,*X*,*Y*,*Flags*,*Id*,*Maxlen*,*Width*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

StringGadget allows you to create an Intuition style 'text entry' gadget. When clicked on, a string gadget brings up a text cursor, and is ready to accept text entry from the keyboard.

X and *Y* specifies the gadgets position, relative to the top left of the window it is to appear in.

See the beginning of the chapter for the relevant *Flags* for a string gadget.

Id is an identification value to be attached to this gadget. All gadgets in a gadgetlist should have unique *Id* numbers, allowing you to detect which gadget has been selected. *Id* may be any positive,

non-zero number.

Maxlen refers to the maximum number of characters which may appear in this gadgets.

Width refers to how wide, in pixels, the gadget should be. A string gadget may have a width less than the maximum number of characters it may contain, as characters will be scrolled through the gadget when necessary.

You may read the current contents of a string gadget using the **StringText** function.

Example:

```

; string gadget example
;
StringGadget 0,80,16,0,1,40,160 ;add string gadget to gadgetlist 0
StringGadget 0,80,32,0,2,40,160 ;add another string gadget
TextGadget 0,8,180,0,3," EXIT " ;add an 'EXIT' gadget

Screen 0,3 ;open a screen, and window...

Window 0,0,0,320,200,$100f,"String Gadgets!",1,2,0

WLocate 8,8 ;print some text...
Print "Name:"
WLocate 8,24 ;and some more...
Print "Address:"

Repeat ;wait for 'QUIT'
Until WaitEvent=64 AND GadgetHit=3

```

See Also:

TextGadget, **ShapeGadget**, **PropGadget**, **StringText**, **ActivateString**, **ClearString**, **ResetString**

Function: **StringText\$**

Syntax: **StringText\$ (GadgetList#,Id)**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **Stringtext\$** function allows you to determine the current contents of a string gadget. **StringText\$** will return a string of characters representing the string gadgets contents.

Example:

```

; activated string gadget example
;
StringGadget 0,128,16,0,1,40,160 ;make a string gadget
TextGadget 0,8,180,0,2," EXIT " ;and an exit gadget
Screen 0,3 ;open screen and window

```

Window 0,0,0,320,200,\$100f,"StringText\$ demo...",1,2,0

WLocate 4,8

Print "Type your name:"

ActivateString 0,1 ;turn on string gadget

Repeat

;wait for 'EXIT'

a.l=WaitEvent

If a=64 AND GadgetHit=1 ;string entry complete?

WLocate 8,96

Print Centre\$("Hello there "+StringText\$(0,1),38)

ClearString 0,1

Redraw 0,1

ActivateString 0,1

Endif

Until a=64 AND GadgetHit=2

See Also:

StringGadget

Statement: **ActivateString**

Syntax: **ActivateString** Window#,Id

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ActivateString may be used to 'automatically' activate a string gadget. This is identical to the program user having clicked in the string gadget themselves, as the string gadget's cursor will appear, and further keystrokes will be sent to the string gadget.

It is often nice of a program to activate important string gadgets, as it saves the user the hassle of having to reach for the mouse before the keyboard.

Example:

```
;  
; string gadget input example  
;  
StringGadget 0,128,16,0,1,40,160 ;make a string gadget  
TextGadget 0,8,180,0,2," EXIT " ;and an exit gadget  
Screen 0,3 ;open screen and window
```

Window 0,0,0,320,200,\$100f,"String Gadget Activated...",1,2,0

WLocate 4,8 ;prompt...

Print "Type your name:"

ActivateString 0,1 ;turn on string gadget

Repeat ;wait for 'EXIT'

Until WaitEvent=64 AND GadgetHit=2

See Also:

StringGadget, ResetString, ClearString

Statement: **ResetString**

Syntax: **ResetString GadgetList#,Id**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ResetString allows you to 'reset' a string gadget. This will cause the string gadget's cursor position to be set to the leftmost position.

Example:

```

;
; reset string gadget example
;

StringGadget 0,128,16,0,1,40,160      ;make a string gadget
TextGadget 0,8,180,0,2," EXIT "       ;and an 'exit' gadget
Screen 0,3                         ;open a screen and a window...

Window 0,0,0,320,200,$100f,"ResetString demo...",1,2,0

WLocate 4,8
Print "Type your name:"           ;prompt...
ActivateString 0,1                 ;click on string gadget for them...

Repeat                                ;do...
  a.l=WaitEvent                      ;wait for something to happen
  If a=64 AND GadgetHit=1            ;string entry complete?
    ResetString 0,1                  ;yes, reset string gadget...
    ActivateString 0,1                ;and re-activate it!
  EndIf
  Until a=64 AND GadgetHit=2        ;until 'QUIT' hit.

```

See Also:

StringGadget, ActivateString, ClearString

Statement: **ClearString**

Syntax: **ClearString GadgetList#,Id**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ClearString may be used to clear, or erase, the text in the specified string gadget. The cursor position will also be moved to the leftmost position in the string gadget.

If a string gadget is cleared while it is displayed in a window, the text will not be erased from the actual display. To do this, **ReDraw** must be executed.

Example:

```
; clear string gadget example
;
StringGadget 0,128,16,0,1,40,160      ;make a string gadget
TextGadget 0,8,180,0,2," EXIT " ;and an 'EXIT' gadget
Screen 0,3                         ;open intuition screen and window...
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$100f,"ClearString demo...",1,2,0
WLocate 4,8
Print "Type your name:"      ;prompt...
ActivateString 0,1                 ;activavte string gadget
Repeat
    a.l=WaitEvent                ;wait for something to happen!
    If a=64 AND GadgetHit=1     ;string entry done?
        ClearString 0,1         ;yup - clear text...
        Redraw 0,1              ;re draw gadget...
        ActivateString 0,1       ;and re-activate string gadget
    Endif
Until a=64 AND GadgetHit=2
```

See Also:

StringGadget, **ActivateString**, **ResetString**

Statement: **SetString**

Syntax: **SetString** *GadgetList#*,*ID*,*String\$*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SetString may be used to initialize the contents of a string gadget created with the **StringGadget** command. If the string gadget specified by *GadgetList#* and *Id* is already displayed, you will also need to execute **ReDraw** to display the change.

See also:

StringGadget, **GadgetText\$**, **ReDraw**

Statement: **PropGadget**

Syntax: **PropGadget** *GadgetList#*,*X*,*Y*,*Flags*,*Id*,*Width*,*Height*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **PropGadget** command is used to create a 'proportional gadget'. Proportional gadgets present a program user with a 'slider bar', allowing them to adjust the slider to achieve a desired effect.

Proportional gadgets are commonly used for the 'R G B' sliders seen in many paint packages.

Proportional gadgets have 2 main qualities - a 'pot' (short for potentiometer) setting, and a 'body' setting.

The pot setting refers to the current position of the slider bar, and is in the range 0 through 1. For example, a proportional gadget which has been moved to 'half way' would have a pot setting of '.5'. The body setting refers to the size of the units the proportional gadget represents, and is again in the range 0 through 1. Again taking the RGB colour sliders as an example, each slider is intended to show a particular value in the range 0 through 15 - giving a unit size, or body setting, of 1/16 or '.0625'.

Put simply, the pot setting describes 'where' the slider bar is, while the body setting describes 'how big' it is.

Proportional gadgets may be represented as either horizontal slider bars, vertical slider bars, or a combination of both.

See the beginning of the chapter for relevant *Flags* settings for prop gadgets.

X and *Y* refer to the gadgets position, relative to the top left of the window it is opened in.

Width and *Height* refer to the size of the area the slider should be allowed to move in.

Id is a unique, non zero number which allows you to identify when the gadget is manipulated.

Proportional gadgets may be altered using the **SetVProp** and **SetHProp** commands, and read using the **VPropPot**, **VPropBody**, **HPropPot** and **HPropBody** functions.

Example:

```

;
; propgadget example
;

PropGadget 0,16,5,1,8,64      ;add 'Red' slider to gadgetlist 0
PropGadget 0,24,16,5,2,8,64    ;add 'green' slider
PropGadget 0,40,16,5,3,8,64    ;add 'red' slider
TextGadget 0,8,180,0,4," QUIT " ;and, of course, a 'QUIT' button.

For k=1 To 3                ;go through sliders...
  SetVProp 0,k,0,1/16          ;set them all to pot=0, body=1/16
  Next

Screen 0,3                  ;an intuition screen
RGB 0,0,0                      ;colour 0 to black (same as sliders)

Window 0,0,0,320,200,$100f,"R G B Sliders!",1,3,0

WLocate 4,72                ;label sliders...
Print "R G B"

Repeat
  a.l=WaitEvent              ;do...
  ;what happened?
  Select a
  Case 32 ;gadget down       ;a gadget was pressed...
  If GadgetHit<>4           ;if it wasn't quit...
    Repeat                    ;do...
      RGB 0,VPropPot(0,1)*16,VPropPot(0,2)*16,VPropPot(0,3)*16
    Until Event=64            ;until slider released

```

```
Endif
Case 64           ;a gadget was released...
  If GadgetHit=4 Then End      ;if it was 'QUIT', then do so..
  RGB 0,VPropPot(0,1)*16,VPropPot(0,2)*16,VPropPot(0,3)*16
End Select
Forever
MouseWait
```

See Also:

SetHProp, SetVProp, HPropPot, HPropBody, VPropPot, VPropBody

Statement: SetHProp

Syntax: **SetHProp GadgetList#,Id,Pot,Body**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SetHProp is used to alter the horizontal slider qualities of a proportional gadget. Both *Pot* and *Body* should be in the range 0 through 1.

If **SetHProp** is executed while the specified gadget is already displayed, execution of the **ReDraw** command will be necessary to display the changes.

For a full discussion on proportional gadgets, please refer to the **PropGadget** command.

See Also:

SetVPropPot, HPropPot, HPropBody, VPropPot, VPropBody

Statement: SetVProp

Syntax: **SetVProp GadgetList#,Id,Pot,Body**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SetVProp is used to alter the vertical slider qualities of a proportional gadget. Both *Pot* and *Body* should be in the range 0 through 1.

If **SetVProp** is executed while the specified gadget is already displayed, execution of the **ReDraw** command will be necessary to display the changes.

For a full discussion on proportional gadgets, please refer to the **PropGadget** command.

See Also:

SetHPropPot, HPropPot, HPropBody, VPropPot, VPropBody

Function: HPropPot

Syntax: **HPropPot** (*GadgetList#,Id*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **HPropPot** function allows you to determine the current 'pot' setting of a proportional gadget. **HPropPot** will return a number from 0 up to, but not including, 1, reflecting the gadgets current horizontal pot setting.

Please refer to the **PropGadget** command for a full discussion on proportional gadgets.

See Also:

VPropPot, HPropBody, VPropBody

Function: HPropBody

Syntax: **HPropBody** (*GadgetList#,Id*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **HPropBody** function allows you to determine the current 'body' setting of a proportional gadget. **HPropBody** will return a number from 0 up to, but not including, 1, reflecting the gadgets current horizontal body setting.

Please refer to the **PropGadget** command for a full discussion on proportional gadgets.

See Also:

VPropPot, HPropPot, VPropBody

Function: VPropPot

Syntax: **VPropPot** (*GadgetList#,Id*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **VPropPot** function allows you to determine the current 'pot' setting of a proportional gadget. **VPropPot** will return a number from 0 up to, but not including, 1, reflecting the gadgets current vertical pot setting.

Please refer to the **PropGadget** command for a full discussion on proportional gadgets.

See Also:

HPropPot, HPropBody, VPropBody

Function: **VPropBody**

Syntax: **VPropBody** (*GadgetList#,Id*)

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **VPropBody** function allows you to determine the current 'body' setting of a proportional gadget.

VPropBody will return a number from 0 up to, but not including, 1, reflecting the gadgets current vertical body setting.

Please refer to the **PropGadget** command for a full discussion on proportional gadgets.

See Also:

VPropPot, **HPropPot**, **HPropBody**

Statement: **ReDraw**

Syntax: **ReDraw** *Window#,id*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ReDraw will redisplay the specified gadget in the specified window. This command is mainly of use when a proportional gadget has been altered using **SetHProp** or **SetVProp** and needs to be redrawn, or when a string gadget has been cleared using **ClearString**, and, likewise, needs to be redrawn.

Statement: **Borders**

Syntax: **Borders** [*On/Off*] [*Width,Height*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Borders serves 2 purposes. First, **Borders** may be used to turn on or off the automatic creation of borders around text and string gadgets. Borders are created when either a **Textgadget** or **StringGadget** command is executed. If you wish to disable this, **Borders Off** should be executed before the appropriate **TextGadget** or **StringGadget** command.

Borders may also be used to specify the spacing between a gadget and it's border, *Width* referring to the left/right spacing, and *Height* to the above/below spacing.

Example:

```
;  
;  
; gadget borders example  
;
```

```

Borders Off ;turn borders off...
TextGadget 0,8,16,0,1,"NO BORDERS" ;add a gadget
Borders On ;turn borders on...
TextGadget 0,8,32,0,2,"BORDERS" ;add a gadget
Borders 16,8 ;set border spacing...
TextGadget 0,8,64,0,3,"BIG BORDERS!" ;add a gadget
Borders 8,4 ;this is default border spacing
TextGadget 0,8,180,0,4," QUIT " ;add 'QUIT' gadget
Screen 0,3 ;open screen, and window...
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$100f,"Select a gadget...",1,2,0
Repeat ;wait for 'QUIT'
Until WaitEvent=64 AND GadgetHit=4

```

Statement: BorderPens

Syntax: **BorderPens** *Highlight Colour,Shadow Colour*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

BorderPens allows you to control the colours used when gadget borders are created. Gadget borders may be created by the **TextGadget**, **StringGadget** and **GadgetBorder** commands.

HighLight Colour refers to the colour of the top and left edges of the border, while *Shadow Colour* refers to the right and bottom edges.

The default value for *HighLight Colour* is 1. The default value for *Shadow Colour* is 2.

Example:

```

;
; borderpens example program
;
BorderPens 2,1 ;change gadget border colours
TextGadget 0,8,DispHeight-16,0,1," OK "
TextGadget 0,320-88,DispHeight-16,0,2," CANCEL "
;
Screen 0,2 ;open a screen
RGB 0,6,6 ;set some colours
RGB 1,15,15,15
RGB 2,0,0
RGB 3,15,15,0
;
Window 0,0,0,320,DispHeight,$100f,"My Window",0,0,0
;
Repeat ;wait for gadget hit...
Until WaitEvent=64

```

See Also:

Borders

Statement: GadgetBorder

Syntax: **GadgetBorder** *X,Y,Width,Height*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **GadgetBorder** command may be used to draw a rectangular border into the currently used window.

Proportional gadgets and shape gadgets do not have borders automatically created for them. The **GadgetBorder** command may be used, once a window is opened, to render borders around these gadgets.

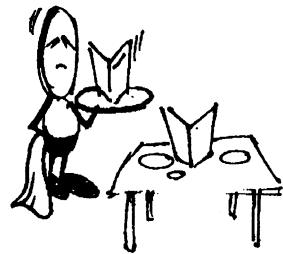
X, Y, Width and *Height* refer to the position of the gadget a border is required around. **GadgetBorder** will automatically insert spaces between the gadget and the border. The **Borders** command may be used to alter the amount of spacing.

Of course, **GadgetBorder** may be used to draw a border around any arbitrary area, regardless of whether or not that area contains a gadget.

See Also:

Borders

27. Menus



Blitz 2 supports many commands for the creation and use of Intuition menus.

Menus are created through the use of **MenuList** objects. Each menulist contains an entire set of menu titles, menu items and possibly sub menu items.

Menulists are attached to windows through the **SetMenu** command.

Each window may use a separate menulist, allowing you to attach relevant menus to different windows.

Statement: **MenuTitle**

Syntax: **MenuTitle Menulist#,Menu,Title\$**

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

MenuTitle is used to add a menu title to a menulist. Menu titles appear when the right mouse button is held down, and usually have menuitems attached to them.

Menu specifies which menu the title should be used for. Higher numbered menus appear further to the right along the menu bar, with 0 being the leftmost menu. Menutitles should be added in left to right order, with menu 0 being the first created, then 1 and so on...

Title\$ is the actual text you want to appear when the right mouse button is pressed.

Example:

```

;
;simple menus example
;

MenuTitle 0,0,"PROJECT" ;create a menu title
MenuItem 0,0,0,0,"QUIT" ;and an item...
MenuTitle 0,1,"EDIT" ;create another menu title
MenuItem 0,0,1,0,"CUT" ;and give it some items...
MenuItem 0,0,1,1,"COPY" ;...

Screen 0,3,"Menus Example" ;an intuition screen, and below, a window

Window 0,0,12,320,DispHeight-12,$100f,"Hold Down the right mouse button... ",0,1

SetMenu 0 ;attach menulist to currently used window

Repeat ;wait...until 'QUIT' selected.
Until WaitEvent=256 AND MenuHit=0 AND ItemHit=0

```

See Also:

MenuItem, ShapeItem, SubItem, ShapeSub

Statement: MenuItem

Syntax: **MenuItem** *MenuList#*,*Flags*,*Menu*,*Item*,*Itemtext\$*[,*Shortcut\$*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

MenuItem is used to create a **text** menu item. Menu items appear vertically below menu titles when the mouse is moved over a menu title with the right mouse button held down.

Flags affects the operation of the menu item.

A value of 0 creates a stand 'select' menu item.

A value of 1 creates a 'toggle' menu item. Toggle menu items are used for 'on/off' type options. When a toggle menu item is selected, it will change state between on and off. An 'on' toggle item is identified by a 'tick' or check mark.

A value of 2 creates a special type of toggle menu item. Any menu items which appear under the same menu with a *Flags* setting of 2 are said to be mutually exclusive. This means that only 1 of them may be in the 'on' state at one time. If a menu item of this nature is toggled into the 'on' state, any other mutually exclusive menu items which may have previously been 'on' will be automatically turned 'off'.

Flags values of 3 and 4 correspond to values 1 and 2, only the item will initially appear in the 'on' state.

Menu specifies the menu title under which the menu item should appear.

Item specifies the menu item number this menu item should be referenced as. Higher numbered items appear further down a menu item list, with 0 being the topmost item. Menu items should be added in 'top down' order, with menu item 0 being the first item created.

Itemtext\$ is the actual text for the menu item.

An optional *Shortcut\$* string allows you to select a one character 'keyboard shortcut' for the menu item.

Example:

```
;          ; toggle items in menu example
;          ;
MenuItem 0,0,"Testing"      ;create a menu title
MenuItem 0,0,0,"Load  ","L"   ;and an item (with shortcut!)
MenuItem 0,0,1,"Save","S"     ;another item...
MenuItem 0,1,0,2," ASCII ?"  ;this is a toggle item!
MenuItem 0,0,3,"QUIT!!!!!"
```

```
Screen 0,3           ;an intuition screen
```

```
Window 0,0,12,320,DispHeight-12,$100f,"Select a Menu...",1,2
```

```
SetMenu 0
```

```

Repeat ;wait for 'QUIT'...
;check for certain menus here...
Until WaitEvent=256 AND MenuHit=0 AND ItemHit=3

```

See Also:

MenuTitle, **ShapeItem**, **SubItem**, **ShapeSub**

Statement: ShapeItem

Syntax: **ShapeItem** *MenuList#*,*Flags*,*Menu*,*Item*,*Shape#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ShapeItem is used to create a graphical menu item.

Shape# refers to a previously initialized shape object to be used as the menu item's graphics.

All other parameters are identical to those for **MenuItem**.

Example:

```

;
; shapeitem example
;
Screen 0,3 ;open an intuition screen
ScreensBitmap 0,0 ;borrow it's bitmap
BitMapOutput 0 ;send 'Print' to the bitmap
Cls ;clear bitmap
Print "LoadSaveQuit" ;write some text
GetaShape 0,0,32,8 ;get 'Load' as shape 0
GetaShape 1,32,0,32,8 ;get 'Save' as shape 1
GetaShape 2,64,0,32,8 ;get 'Quit' as shape 2
Cls ;clear bitmap again
MenuTitle 0,0,"PROJECT" ;make a menu title

For k=0 To 2 ;process all 3 shapes
  Scale k,4,2 ;stretch 'em a bit
  ShapeItem 0,0,k,k ;use shape as a menu item
Next

Window 0,0,0,320,DispHeight,$100f,"Select a menu!",1,2
SetMenu 0 ;attach menulist to window

Repeat ;wait for 'QUIT'
Until WaitEvent=256 AND MenuHit=0 AND ItemHit=2

```

See Also:

MenuTitle, **MenuItem**, **SubItem**, **ShapeSub**

Statement: SubItem

Syntax: **SubItem** *MenuList#*,*Flags*,*Menu*,*Item*,*Subitem*,*Subitemtext\$*[,*Shortcut\$*]

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

All menu items may have an optional list of sub menu items attached to them. To attach a sub menu item to a menu item, you use the **SubItem** command.

Item specifies the menu item to attach the sub item to.

Subitem refers to the number of the sub menu item to attach. Higher numbered sub items appear further down a sub item list, with 0 being the topmost sub item. Sub items should be added in 'top down' order, with sub item 0 being created first.

Subitemtext\$ specifies the actual text for the sub item. As with menu items, sub items may have an optional keyboard shortcut character, specified using the *Shortcut\$* parameter.

All other parameters are identical to the **MenuItem** command.

Example:

```
;  
; subitems menu example  
;  
MenuItem 0,0,"PROJECT"           ;make a menu title  
MenuItem 0,0,0,0,"LOAD "+Chr$(187) ;item...  
SubItem 0,0,0,0,"PICTURE"        ;sub items...  
SubItem 0,0,0,1,"BRUSH"          ;  
MenuItem 0,0,0,1,"QUIT"  
Screen 0,3                      ;open a screen and window  
  
Window 0,0,12,320,DispHeight-12,$100f,"Select a menu...",1,2  
SetMenu 0   ;attach menu list  
  
Repeat           ;wait for 'QUIT'  
  Until WaitEvent=256 AND MenuHit=0 AND ItemHit=1
```

See Also:

MenuItem, **ShapeItem**, **ShapeSub**

Statement: ShapeSub

Syntax: **ShapeSub** *MenuList#*,*Flags*,*Menu*,*Item*,*Subitem*,*Shape#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

ShapeSub allows you to create a graphic sub menu item. *Shape#* specifies a previously created shape object to be used as the sub item's graphics.

All other parameters are identical to those in **SubItem**.

Statement: SetMenu

Syntax: **SetMenu** *MenuList#*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SetMenu is used to attach a menulist to the currently used window. Each window may have only one menulist attached to it.

Statement: MenuGap

Syntax: **MenuGap** *X Gap, Y Gap*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

Executing **MenuGap** before creating any menu titles, items or sub items, allows you to control the layout of the menu.

X Gap refers to an amount, specified in pixels, to be inserted to the left and right of all menu items and sub menu items. *Y Gap* refers to an amount, again in pixels, to be inserted above and below all menu items and sub menu items.

Example:

```

;
; menugap example
;
MenuGap 32,16           ;set a BIG gap
MenuTitle 0,0,"PROJECT" ;set up MenuList 0...
MenuItem 0,0,0,"LOAD"
MenuItem 0,0,1,"SAVE"
MenuItem 0,0,2,"QUIT"
MenuTitle 0,1,"EDIT"
MenuItem 0,1,0,"CUT"
MenuItem 0,1,1,"COPY"
MenuItem 0,1,2,"PASTE"
Screen 0,3                ;open an intuition screen and window...
Window 0,0,320,DispHeight,$100f,"Select a menu...",1,2
SetMenu 0                  ;attach menulist
Repeat                   ;wait for 'QUIT'
Until WaitEvent=256 AND MenuHit=0 AND ItemHit=2

```

Statement: SubItemOff

Syntax: **SubItemOff** *X Offset, Y Offset*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

SubItemOff allows you to control the relative position of the top of a list of sub menu items, in relation to their associated menu item.

Whenever a menu item is created which is to have sub menu items, it's a good idea to append the name of the menu item with the '>>' character. This may be done using **Chr\$(187)**. This gives the user a visual indication that more options are available. To position the sub menu items correctly so that they appear after the '>>' character, **SubItemOff** should be used.

Example:

```
; ; subitemoff example
;
MenuTitle 0,0,"Test"
MenuItem 0,0,0,0,"More "+Chr$(187)+" "
SubItemOff 60,8
SubItem 0,0,0,0,0,"One Sub Menu Item..."
SubItem 0,0,0,0,1,"Two Sub Menu Items.."
MenuItem 0,0,0,1,"QUIT"
Screen 0,3
Window 0,0,0,320,DispHeight,$100f,"Select a menu...",1,2
SetMenu 0
Repeat
Until WaitEvent=256 AND MenuHit=0 AND ItemHit=1
```

Statement: **MenuState**

Syntax: **MenuState** *MenuList#*[,*Menu*[,*Item*[,*Subitem*]]]],*On*/*Off*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **MenuState** command allows you to turn menus, or sections of menus, on or off.

MenuState with just the *MenuList#* parameter may be used to turn an entire menu list on or off.

MenuState with *MenuList#* and *Menu* parameters may be used to turn a menu on or off.

Similarly, menu items and sub items may be turned on or off by specifying the appropriate parameters.

Statement: **MenuColour**

Syntax: **MenuColour** *Colour*

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

MenuColour allows you to determine what colour any menu item or sub item text is rendered in. **MenuColour** should be executed before the appropriate menu item commands.

Example:

```

;
;menucolour example
;
MenuTitle 0,0,"COLOUR"      ;set up menu title
MenuColour 1                ;next item made will be in colour 1...
MenuItem 0,0,0,"LOAD" ;this is it
MenuColour 2                ;now colour 2
MenuItem 0,0,0,1,"SAVE" ;
MenuColour 3                ;and 3...
MenuItem 0,0,0,2,"QUIT"
Screen 0,3                  ;open an intuition screen and window
Window 0,0,0,320,DispHeight,$100f,"Select a menu...",1,2
SetMenu 0                  ;attach our menus
Repeat                   ;wait for 'QUIT'
Until WaitEvent=256 AND MenuHit=0 AND ItemHit=2

```

Function: **MenuChecked**

Syntax: **MenuChecked** (*MenuList#*,*Menu*,*Item*[,*Subitem*])

Modes: Amiga/Blitz

Description:

The **MenuChecked** function allows you to tell whether or not a 'toggle' type menu item or menu sub item is currently 'checked' or 'on'. If the specified menu item or sub item is in fact checked, **MenuChecked** will return 'true' (-1). If not, **MenuChecked** will return 'false' (0).

Example:

```

;
; enable checking on menus example using menuchecked
;
MenuTitle 0,0,"TEST!"      ;create menu title
MenuItem 0,1,0,0,"OK TO QUIT?" ;a toggle menu item
MenuItem 0,0,0,1,"QUIT"       ;an ordinary one.
Screen 0,3                  ;open screen and window...
Window 0,0,0,320,DispHeight,$140f,"Select a menu...",1,2

Repeat
  a.l=WaitEvent      ;wait for something to happen
  If a=256 AND ItemHit=1    ;is it 'QUIT' ?
    If MenuChecked(0,0,0) ;is item 0 'on' (checked)?
      End      ;Yup - go ahead and quit
    Else
      WLocate 0,0;else, tell user
      Print "Quit Not Enabled!"
    Endif
  Endif
  Forever

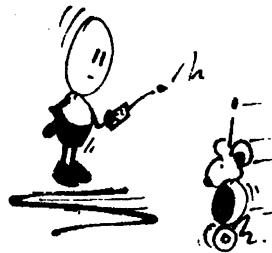
```

See Also:

MenuItem, **ShapeItem**, **SubItem**, **ShapeSub**

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

28. BREXX



The Blitz 2 BREXX commands allow you to take control of certain aspects of Intuition. Through BREXX, your programs can 'fool' Intuition into thinking that the mouse has been played with, or the keyboard has been used. This is ideal for giving your programs the ability to perform 'macros' - where one keystroke can set off a chain of pre-defined events.

The BREXX commands support tape objects. These are predefined sequences of events which may be played back at any time. The convenient **Record** command can be used to easily create tapes. Using the **MacroKey** command, tapes may also be attached to any keystroke to be played back instantly at the push of a button!

Please note that none of the BREXX commands are available in Blitz mode.

Statement: **AbsMouse**

Syntax: **AbsMouse X,Y**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

AbsMouse allows you to position the mouse pointer at an absolute display location. The **X** parameter specifies how far across the display the pointer is to be positioned, while the **Y** parameter specifies how far down the display. **X** must be in the range zero through 639. **Y** must be in the range zero through 399 for NTSC machines, or zero through 511 for PAL machines.

Example:

```

;
; brex absmouse program example
;
AbsMouse 0,0 ;This will move the mouse pointer to
;the upper left of the display

AbsMouse 319,199 ;This will approximately 'centre' the mouse
;pointer on the display

AbsMouse 639,399 ;This will move the mouse pointer to the lower
;right of the display
MouseWait

```

See Also:

RelMouse

Statement: RelMouse

Syntax: **RelMouse X Offset, Y Offset**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

RelMouse allows you to move the mouse pointer a relative distance from it's current location. Positive *offset* parameters will move the pointer rightwards and downwards, while negative *offset* parameters will move the pointer leftwards and upwards.

Example:

```
;  
; brex relmouse program example  
;  
AbsMouse 0,0           ;move pointer to upper left  
  
For k=1 To 100      ;across and down 100 times  
  RelMouse 1,1  
  Next  
  
MouseWait
```

See Also:

AbsMouse

Statement: MouseButton

Syntax: **MouseButton Button,On/Off**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

MouseButton allows you to alter the status of the Amiga's left or right mouse buttons. *Button* should be set to zero to alter the left mouse button, or one to alter the right mouse button. *On/Off* refers to whether the mouse button should be pressed (*On*) or released (*Off*).

Example:

```
;  
; brex mousebutton program example  
;  
low=DispHeight*2-1    ;allow for NTSC or PAL  
AbsMouse 639,low    ;Move mouse pointer to lower right.  
MouseButton 0,On     ;Click down left button.  
AbsMouse 319,low/2   ;move mouse pointer to middle  
MouseButton 0,Off     ;Release left button.  
MouseWait
```

See Also:

ClickButton

Statement: **ClickButton**

Syntax: **ClickButton** *Button*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

ClickButton is identical to executing two **MouseButton** commands - one for pressing the mouse button down, and one for releasing it. This can be used for such things as gadget selection.

Example:

```
; brex clickbutton program example
;
TextGadget 0,32,32,0,1," CLICK ME "
Screen 0,3
Window 0,0,0,320,200,$100f,"Magic!",1,2,0
AbsMouse 40,0
For k=1 To 18
  RelMouse 4,4
Next
ClickButton 0
MouseWait
```

Statement: **Type**

Syntax: **Type** *String\$*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Type causes Intuition to behave exactly as if a certain series of keyboard characters had been entered. These are normally sent to the currently active window.

Example:

```
; brex recording program example
;
Type "Hello There!"
MouseWait
```

Statement: Record

Syntax: **Record** [*Tape#*]

Modes: Amiga

Description:

Record allows you to create a tape object. Tape objects are sequences of mouse and/or keyboard events which may be played back at any time.

When a *tape#* parameter is supplied to the **Record** command, recording will begin. From that point on, all mouse and keyboard activity will be recorded onto the specified tape.

The **Record** command with no parameters will cause any recording to finish.

Example:

```
; brex recording program example
;
Type "Hello There!"
MouseWait

NPrint "Play with the mouse, then hit the right mouse button."
AbsMouse 0,0
Record 0          ;begin recording.
While Joyb(0)<>2
Wend
Record          ;finish recording
AbsMouse 0,0
PlayBack 0
MouseWait
```

See Also:

PlayBack, **TapeTrap**

Statement: PlayBack

Syntax: **PlayBack** [*Tape#*]

Modes: Amiga

Description:

PlayBack begins playback of a previously created tape object. When a *Tape#* parameter is supplied, playback of the specified tape will commence. If no parameter is supplied, any tape which may be in the process of being played back will finish.

Example:

```
; brex program example
;
low=DispHeight*2-1      ;allow for NTSC or PAL displays
TapeTrap 0               ;start creating a tape
QuietTrap On             ;set recording mode to quiet.
AbsMouse 639,low
MouseButton 0,On
AbsMouse 639,low/2
MouseButton 0,Off
TapeTrap                 ;Turn off trapping.
Playback 0               ;Play It Back!
MouseWait
```

See Also:

[Record](#), [TapeTrap](#), [QuickPlay](#)

Statement: QuickPlay

Syntax: **QuickPlay** *On/Off*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

QuickPlay will alter the way tapes are played using the **Playback** command. If **QuickPlay** is enabled by use of an *On* parameter, then all **Playback** commands will cause tapes to be played with no delays between actions. This means any pauses which may be present in a tape (for instance, delays between mouse movements) will be ignored when it is played back. **QuickPlay Off** will return **Playback** to its default mode of including all tape pauses. This is sometimes necessary when playing back tapes which must at some point wait for disk access to finish before continuing.

See Also:

[Playback](#)

Statement: PlayWait

Syntax: **PlayWait**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

PlayWait may be used to halt program flow until a **Playback** of a tape has finished.

See Also:

[Playback](#)

Function: XStatus

Syntax: **XStatus**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

XStatus returns a value depending upon the current state of the BRexx system. Possible return values and their meanings are as follows:

Value:	Meaning:
0	BRexx is currently inactive. No tapes are either being recorded or played back.
1	BRexx is currently in the process of recording a tape. This may be due to either the Record or TapeTrap commands.
2	BRexx is currently playing a tape back.

See Also:

Record, **TapeTrap**, **PlayBack**

Statement: SaveTape

Syntax: **SaveTape Tape#,Filename\$**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

SaveTape allows you to save a previously created tape object out to disk. This tape may later be reloaded using **LoadTape**.

See Also:

LoadTape

Statement: LoadTape

Syntax: **LoadTape Tape#,Filename\$**

Modes: Amiga

Description:

LoadTape allows you to load a tape object previously saved with **SaveTape** for use with the **PlayBack** command.

See Also:

SaveTape

Statement: **TapeTrap**

Syntax: **TapeTrap** [*Tape#*]

Modes: Amiga

Description:

TapeTrap allows you to record a sequence of **AbsMouse**, **RelMouse**, **MouseButton** and **ClickButton** events to a tape object.

TapeTrap works similarly to **Record**, in that both commands are used to create a tape. However, whereas **Record** receives information from the actual mouse and keyboard, **TapeTrap** receives information from any **AbsMouse**, **RelMouse**, **MouseButton** and **ClickButton** commands which may be executed.

TapeTrap with no parameter will finish tape creation.

See Also:

Record, **PlayBack**, **QuietTrap**

Statement: **QuietTrap**

Syntax: **QuietTrap** *On* | *Off*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

QuietTrap determines the way in which any **TapeTrapping** will be executed.

QuietTrap On will cause any **AbsMouse**, **RelMouse**, **MouseButton** and **ClickButton** commands to be recorded to tape, but not to actually have any effect on the program currently running.

QuietTrap Off will cause any **AbsMouse**, **RelMouse**, **MouseButton** and **ClickButton** commands to be recorded to tape, AND to cause their usual effects.

QuietTrap Off is the default mode.

See Also:

TapeTrap

Statement: MacroKey

Syntax: **MacroKey** *Tape#,Rawkey,Qualifier*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

MacroKey causes a previously defined tape object to be attached to a particular keyboard key. *RawKey* and *Qualifier* define the key the tape should be attached to.

Example:

```
; brex macrokey program example
;
TapeTrap 0
QuietTrap On
AbsMouse 0,0
AbsMouse 639,0
AbsMouse 639,399
AbsMouse 0,399
AbsMouse 0,0
TapeTrap
MacroKey 0,128,0
NPrint "Hit F1..."
MouseWait
```

Statement: FreeMacroKey

Syntax: **MacroKey** *Rawkey,Qualifier*

Modes: Amiga

Description:

FreeMacroKey causes a previously defined macro key to be removed so that a BRex tape is no longer attached to it.

See Also:

MacroKey

The Blitz 2 Objects

The following chapter covers the Blitz 2 objects. Objects are structures such as bitplanes and shapes that Blitz dynamically allocates and controls.

The information included in the listing at the end of this chapter can be used to 'intimately' manipulate Blitz 2 objects.

Firstly the address of the structure in memory needs to be found. The following is an example of picking up the address of the bitplane data from a shape:

```
INCLUDE "blitz2incls.bb" ;or use the resident file!
LoadShape 0,"myshape"
*a.shape=Addr Shape(0) ;a is a pointer type to a shape type
d.l=*&a\_data           ;the long variable d now holds the shapes image location
```

Modules are sound-tracker compatible files used to sequence music.

```
NEWTYPE.module
_mt_data.l    ;00: NULL if no module present,
               ; else pointer to module data
_length.l     ;04: length of module data
;08: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

BlitzFonts are any 8x8 fonts able to be used to print in Blitz mode.

```
NEWTYPE.blitzfont
_font.l       ;00: NULL if no font present,
               ; else pointer to GFX TextFont struct
;04: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

Screens are simply pointers to Intuition screens.

```
NEWTYPE.screen
_screen.l     ;00: NULL if no screen present,
               ; else pointer to INTUITION screen struct
;04: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

Menus are simply pointers to a list of Intuition menus.

```
NEWTYPE.menuList
  _menu.l      ;00: NULL if no menu present,
                ; else pointer to linked INTUITION
                ; menu items
                ;04: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

IntuiFonts are normal Amiga fonts used with windows and screens.

```
NEWTYPE.intuifont
  _fontname.l   ;00: Pointer to name of font
  _ysize.w     ;04: height of font
  _pad.w       ;06:
  _font.l      ;08: NULL if no font present,
                ; else pointer to GFX TextFont struct
  _pad2.b(4)    ;12:
                ;16: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

Shapes are used for all the blitting commands.

```
NEWTYPE.shape
  _pixwidth.w   ;00: NULL if no shape present,
                ; else pixel width of shape
  _pixheight.w  ;02: pixel height of shape
  _depth.w     ;04: depth, in bitplanes, of shape
  _ebwidth.w   ;06: even byte width of shape
  _bltsize.w   ;08: BLTSIZE of shape
  _xhandle.w   ;10: horizontal handle of shape
  _yhandle.w   ;12: vertical handle of shape
  _data.l      ;14: pointer to graphic data - Plane1, Plane2...
  _cookie.l    ;18: pointer to one bitplane cookiecut
  _onebpmem.w   ;22: memory taken by one bitplane of shape
  _onebpmemx.w  ;24: memory taken by one bitplane of shape,
                ; plus an extra word per bitplane per
                ; vertical pixel
  _allbpmem.w   ;26: memory taken by entire shape.
  _allbpmemx.w  ;28: memory taken by entire shape, plus an
                ; extra word per bitplane per vertical
                ; pixel
  _pad.b(2)     ;30:
                ;32: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

Tapes are used by BRexx for recording a series of events that can 'drive' Intuition.

```
NEWTYPE.tape
  _ielist.l    ;00: NULL if no tape present,
                ; else pointer to list of InputEvents
  _timevalhi.l ;04: high 4 bytes of timeval of first event
  _timevallo.l ;08: low 4 bytes of timeval of first event
  _pad.b(4)    ;12:
                ;16: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

Stencils are used for Blits that need to go behind some things and in front of others

```
NEWTYPE.stencil
  _ebwidth.w    ;00: NULL if no stencil present,
                 ; else even byte width
  _height.w     ;02: height of stencil
  _data.l       ;04: pointer to one bitplane of stencil data
                 ;08: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

A queue item holds information for the **UnQueue** command.

```
NEWTYPE.queueitem
  _mod.w        ;00: blitter BLTDMOD value
  _bltsize.w    ;02: blitter BLTSIZE value
  _depth.w      ;04: depth, in bitplanes, of bitmap
  _bitmap.l     ;06: bitmap object QBLIT was made to
  _offset.l     ;10: offset into bitmap QBLIT was made at
End NEWTYPE
```

Queues are like list headers that point to a series of queue items.

```
NEWTYPE.queue
  *_current.queueitem ;00: pointer to where to add next QBLIT
                      ; QueueItem
  *_first.queueitem  ;04: NULL if no Queue present,
                     ; else pointer to start of
                     ; .QueueItem block
  _length.l         ;08: Length of allocated queue memory
  _pad.b(4)         ;12:
                     ;16: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

FieldItems are used for Random Access files.

```
NEWTYPE.fielditem
  *_next.fielditem ;00: For linked list.
  _data.l          ;04: pointer to where data comes from
                 ; or goes to
  _lenth.l         ;08: length of above data
End NEWTYPE
```

The file structure is used to control open DOS files in Blitz 2.

```
NEWTYPE.file
  _handle.l       ;00: NULL if no file present,
                 ; else dos file handle of file
  _reclen.l       ;04: Byte length of 'Fields' for this file
  _pad.b(4)       ;08:
  *_fields.fielditem ;12: list of field items
  _buffer.l       ;16: buffer for my own read/write routines
  _bufflen.w      ;20: length of above buffer
  _flags.w        ;22: =0 : buffer not altered,
                 ; <0 : buffer written to,
                 ; >0 : seek necessary when buffer flushed
  _valid.w        ;24: number of valid bytes in buffer
  _seekoff.w      ;26: seek (position) offset into buffer
```

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

```
_seek.l      ;28: dos seek of start of buffer
End NEWTYPE
```

The Palette structure is used to hold sets of colours for both Screens and Slices

```
NEWTYPE.palette
  _numcols.w    ;00: NULL if no palette present,
                 ; else number of colours (0-31) in palette
  _colours.w(32) ;02: Max of 32 RGB words.
  ;
  _lowcol.w     ;66: low colour for cycling,
                 ; <0 = end of cycling table.
  _hicol.w      ;68: high colour for cycling
  _speed.w      ;70: speed of cycling - 16384 = max.
                 ; if speed = 0, then cycle downwards,
                 ; else cycle upwards.
  _var.w        ;72: variable to add speed to.
  ;
  ; (More possible cycling entries)
  ;
  ;128: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

Buffers are used by the BBlit command to hold background information that a BBlit overwrites.

```
NEWTYPE.buffer
  _current.l    ;00: Pointer to current point in buffer
                 ; to add BBLIT info to.
  _first.l      ;04: NULL if no buffer present,
                 ; else pointer to beginning of buffer
                 ; memory.
  _length.l     ;08: length in bytes of buffer memory.
  _pad.b(4)     ;12:
  ;16: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

A gadgetlist simply points to a list of Intuition gadgets.

```
NEWTYPE.gadgetlist
  _gadgets.l    ;00: NULL if no gadgetlist present,
                 ; else pointer to first gadget
                 ; in list of Intuition gadgets.
  ;04: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

Window objects hold information about the Intuition window they point to.

```
NEWTYPE.window
  _window.l     ;00: NULL if no window present,
                 ; else pointer to Intuition
                 ; window struct
  _cursx.w      ;04: horizontal cursor position in window
  _cursy.w      ;06: vertical cursor position in window
  _pointer.l    ;08: pointer optional window pointer
                 ; sprite data.
  _length.l     ;12: length of window pointer sprite data.
```

;16: sizeof
End NEWTYPE

Slices hold information concerning the copper lists used to create Blitz mode displays.

NEWTYPE.slice
`_ypos.w ;00: NULL if no slice present,
; else vertical position of slice
_codeflags.w ;02: slice flags
_codebitplanes.w ;04: number of bitplanes available in slice
_codesprites.w ;06: number of sprites available in slice
_codecolours.w ;08: number of colours available in slice
_codebitplanes.l ;10: pointer to address, in copper list,
; of bitplane MOVEs
_codesprites.l ;14: pointer to address, in copper list,
; of sprite MOVEs
_codecolours.l ;18: pointer to address, in copper list,
; of colour MOVEs
_codeBPLCON1.l ;22: pointer to address, in copper list,
; of word MOVED to BPLCON1
_codeBPLCON2.l ;26: pointer to address, in copper list,
; of word MOVED to BPLCON2
_codepad.b(2) ;30:
;32: sizeof`
End NEWTYPE

BitMaps hold pointers and other information.

NEWTYPE.bitmap
`_ebwidth.w ;00: even byte width of bitmap
_codeheight.w ;02: pixel height of bitmap
_codedepth.w ;04: depth, in bitplanes, of bitmap
_codepad.b(2) ;06:
_codedata.l(8) ;08: Max of 8 pointers to bitplanes
_codepad2.b(22) ;40:
_codeisreal.w ;62: =0 : no bitmap present
; <0 : bitmap present
; >0 : bitmap present, but not ours
;64: sizeof`
End NEWTYPE

Sound objects hold information concerning the noisier commands in Blitz 2.

NEWTYPE.sound
`_data.l ;00: NULL if no sound present,
; else pointer to sound data
_codeperiod.w ;04: period of sound
_codelength.w ;06: length, in words, of sound data
_codeloop.l ;08: repeat to loop position of sound
_codelooplength.w ;12: length of looping section, in words
_codepad.b(2) ;14:
;16: sizeof`
End NEWTYPE

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

Sprite objects contain the information required by the Blitz 2 sprite library.

```
NEWTYPE.sprite
    _data.l      ;00: NULL if no sprite present,
                 ; else pointer to sprite data
    _height.w    ;04: height of sprite, in pixels, plus
                 ; an extra 1
    _channels.w  ;06: number of sprite channels required
                 ; to display sprite
    _flags.w     ;08: low byte = pix width of sprite,
                 ; hi bit = 1 if 16 colour sprite
    _nextoff.w   ;10: difference, in bytes, between separate
                 ; sprites for separate sprite channels
    _xhandle.w   ;12: horizontal handle for sprite
    _yhandle.w   ;14: vertical handle for sprite
                 ;16: sizeof
End NEWTYPE
```

Compile Time Errors

The following is a list of all the Blitz 2 compile time errors. Blitz 2 will print these messages when unable to compile a line of your code and fails. The cursor will be placed on the line with the offending error in most cases.

Sometimes the cause of the error will not be directly related to where Blitz 2 ceased compiling. Any reference to an include file or a macro could mean the error is there and not on the line referenced.

The errors are grouped under the following headers:

General Syntax Errors

Procedure Related Errors

Constants Related Errors

Expression Evaluation Errors

Illegal Errors

Library Based Errors

Include Errors

Program Flow Based Errors

Type Based Errors

Conditional Compiling Errors

Resident Based Errors

Macro Based Errors

Array Errors

Interrupt Based Errors

Label Errors

Direct Mode Errors

Select ... End Select Errors

Blitz Mode / Amiga Mode Errors

Strange Beast Errors

General Syntax Errors

Syntax Error

Check for typing mistakes and check your syntax with the reference manual.

Garbage at End of Line

A syntax error of sorts. Causes are usually typos and missing semi colons from the beginning of Remarks. Also a .type suffix when accessing NewType items will generate this error.

Numeric Over Flow

The signed value is too large to fit in the variable space provided, if you need bytes to hold 0..255 rather than -128..127 etc turn off Overflow checking in the runtime errors section of the Options requester.

Bad Data

The values following the Data.type statement are not of the same type as precedes the Data statement.

Procedure Related Errors

Not Enough Parameters

The command, statement or function needs more parameters. Use the HELP key for correct number and meaning of parameters with Blitz][commands and check Statement and Function definitions in your code.

Duplicate parameter variable

Parameters listed in statements and functions must be unique.

Too many parameters

The statement or function was defined needing less parameters than supplied by the calling routine.

Illegal Parameter Type

NewTypes cannot be passed to procedures.

Illegal Procedure return

The statement or function return is syntactically incorrect.

Illegal End Procedure

The statement or function end is syntactically incorrect.

Shared outside of Procedure

Shared variables are only applicable to procedures.

Variable already Shared

Shared variables must be unique in name.

Can't Nest Procedures

Procedures may NOT be defined within procedures, only from the primary code.

Can't Dim Globals in Procedures

Global arrays may only be defined from the primary code.

Can't Goto/Gosub a Procedure

Goto and Gosub must always point to an existing part of the primary code.

Duplicate Procedure name

A procedure (statement or function) of the same name has been defined previously in the source.

Procedure not found

The statement or function has not previously been defined in the source code.

Unterminated Procedure

The End Function or End Statement commands must terminate a procedure definition.

Illegal Procedure Call

The statement or function call is syntactically incorrect.

Illegal Local Name

Not a valid variable name.

Constants Related Errors

Can't Assign Constant

Constant values can only be assigned to constants, no variables please.

Constant not defined

A constant (such as #num) has been used in an expression without first being defined

Constant already defined

Constants can only be defined once, i.e. cannot change their value through the code.

Illegal Constant

Same as can't assign constant

Fractions Not allowed in Constants

Blitz 2 constants can only contain absolute values, they are usually rounded and no error is generated.

Can't Use Constant

Caused by a clash in constant name definitions.

Constant Not Found

The Constant has not been defined previously in the source code.

Illegal Constant Expression

A constant may only hold whole numbers, either a decimal place, text or a variable name has been included in the constant definition.

Expression Evaluation Errors

Can't Assign Expression

The expression cannot be evaluated or the evaluation has generated a value that is incompatible with the equate.

No Terminating Quote

Any text assigns should start and end with quotes.

Precedence Stack Overflow

You have attained an unprecedented level of complexity in your expression and the Blitz 2 evaluation stack has overflowed. A rare beast indeed!

Illegal Errors

Illegal Trap Vector

The 68000 has only 16 trap vectors.

Illegal Immediate Value

An immediate value must be a constant and must be in range. See the 68000 appendix for immediate value ranges.

Illegal Absolute

The Absolute location specified must be defined and in range.

Illegal Displacement

The Displacement location specified must be defined and in range.

Illegal Assembler Instruction Size

The Instruction size is not available, refer to the 68000 appendix for relevant instruction sizes.

Illegal Assembler Addressing Mode

The addressing mode is not available for that opcode, refer to the 68000 appendix for relevant addressing modes.

Library Based Errors

Illegal TokeJsr token number

Blitz 2 cannot find the library routine referred to by the TokeJsr command, usually caused by the library not being included in DefLibs, not present in the BlitzLibs: directory or the calculation being wrong (token number = libnumber*128 + token offset).

Library not Found : 'library number'

Blitz][cannot find the library routine referred to by a Token, usually caused by the library not being included in DefLibs or the library not present in the BlitzLibs: directories.

Token Not Found : 'token number'

When loading source, Blitz 2 replaces any unfound tokens with ?????, compiling your code with these unknown tokens present will generate the above error.

Include Errors

Already Included

The same source code has already been included previously in the code.

Can't open Include

Blitz 2 cannot find the include file, check the pathname.

Error Reading File

DOS has generated an error during an include.

Program Flow Based Errors

Illegal Else in While Block

See the reference section for the correct use of the Else command with While..Wend blocks.

Until without Repeat

Repeat..Until is a block directive and both must be present.

Repeat Block too large

A Repeat..Until block is limited to 32000 bytes in length.

Repeat without Until

Repeat..Until is a block directive and both must be present.

If Block too Large

Blitz 2 has a limit of 32K for any blocks of code such as IF..ENDIF blocks.

If Without End If

The IF statement has two forms, if the THEN statement is not present then and END IF statement must be present to specify the end of the block.

Duplicate For...Next Error

The same variable has been used for a For..Next loop that is nested within another For..Next loop.

Bad Type for For...Next

The For..Next variable must be of numeric type.

Next without For

FOR..NEXT is a block directive and both commands must be present.

For...Next Block to Long

Blitz 2 restricts all blocks of code to 32K in size.

For Without Next

FOR..NEXT is a block directive and both commands must be present.

Type Based Errors

Can't Exchange different types

The Exchange command can only swap two variables of the same type.

Can't Exchange NewTypes

The Exchange command can not handle NewTypes at present.

Type too Big

The unsigned value is too large to fit in the variable space provided.

Mismatched Types

Caused by mixing different types illegally in an evaluation.

Type Mismatch

Same as Mismatched Types.

Can't Compare Types

Some Types are incompatible with operations such as compares.

Can't Convert Types

The two Types are incompatible and one can not be converted to the other.

Duplicate Offset (Entry) Error

The NewType has two entries of the same name.

Duplicated Type

A Type already exists with the same name.

End NewType without NewType

The NewType..End NewType is a block directive and both must be present.

Type Not Found

No Type definition exists for the type referred to.

Illegal Type

Not a legal type for that function or statement.

Offset not Found

The offset has not been defined in the NewType definition.

Element isn't a pointer

The variable used is not a *var type and so cannot point to another variable.

Illegal Operator for Type

The operator is not suited for the type used.

Too many comma's in Let

The NewType has less entries than the number of values listed after the Let.

Can't use comma in Let

The variable you are assigning multiple values is either not a NewType and cannot hold multiple values or the NewType has only one entry.

Illegal Function Type

A function may not return a NewType.

Conditional Compiling Errors

CNIF/CSIF without CEND

CNIF and CSIF are block directives and a CEND must conclude the block.

CEND without CNIF/CSIF...

CNIF..CEND is a block directive and both commands must be present.

Resident Based Errors

Clash in Residents

Residents being very unique animals, must not include the same Macro and Constant definitions.

Can't Load Resident

Blitz 2 cannot find the Resident file listed in the Options requester. Check the pathname.

Macro Based Errors

Macro Buffer Overflow

The Options requester in the Blitz 2 menu contains a macro buffer size, increase if this error is ever reported. May also be caused by a recursive macro call which generates endless code.

Macro already Defined

Another macro with the same name has already been defined, may have been defined in one of the included resident files as well as somewhere in the source code.

Can't create Macro inside Macro

Macro definitions must occur in the primary code.

Macro without End Macro

End Macro must end a Macro definition.

Macro too Big

Macro's are limited to the buffer sizes defined in the Options requester.

Macros Nested too Deep

Eight levels of macro nesting is available in Blitz 2. Should never happen!!

Macro not Found

The macro has not been defined previous to the !macroName{} call.

Array Errors

Illegal Array type

Should never happen.

Array not found

A variable name followed by parentheses has not been previously defined as an array. Other possible mistakes may be the use of brackets instead of curly brackets for macro and procedure calls, Blitz 2 thinking instead you are referring to an array name.

Array is not a List

A List function has been used on an array that was not dimensioned as a List Array.

Illegal number of Dimensions

List arrays are limited to single dimensions.

Array already Dim'd

An array may not be re-dimensioned.

Can't Create Variable inside Dim

An undefined variable has been used for a dimension parameter with the Dim statement.

Array not yet Dim'd

See Array not found.

Array not Dim'd

See Array not found.

Interrupt Based Errors

End SetInt without SetInt

SetInt..SetInt is a block directive and both commands must be present.

SetInt without End SetInt

SetInt..SetInt is a block directive and both commands must be present.

Can't use Set/Crlnt in Local Mode

Error handling can only be defined by the primary code.

SetErr not allowed in Procedures

Error handling can only be defined by the primary code.

Can't use Set/Crlnt in Local Mode

Error handling can only be defined by the primary code.

End SetInt without SetInt

SetInt..SetInt is a block directive and both commands must be present.

SetInt without End SetInt

SetInt..SetInt is a block directive and both commands must be present.

Illegally nested Interrupts

Interrupt handlers can obviously not be nested.

Can't nest SetErr

Interrupt handlers can obviously not be nested.

End SetErr without SetErr

SetErr..End SetErr is a block directive and both must be present.

Illegal Interrupt Number

Amiga interrupts are limited from 0 to 13. These interrupts are listed in the Amiga Hardware reference appendix.

Label Errors

Label reference out of context

Should never happen.

Label has been used as a Constant

Labels and constants cannot share the same name.

Illegal Label Name

Refer to the Programming in Blitz][chapter for correct variable nomenclature.

Duplicate Label

A label has been defined twice in the same source code. May also occur with macros where a label is not preceded by a \@.

Label not Found

The label has not been defined anywhere in the source code.

Can't Access Label

The label has not been defined in the source code.

Direct Mode Errors

Cont Option Disabled

The Enable Continue option in the Runtime errors of the Options menu has been disabled.

Cont only Available in Direct Mode

Cont can not be called from your code only from the direct mode window.

Library not Available in Direct Mode

The library is only available from within your code.

Illegal direct mode command

Direct mode is unable to execute the command entered.

Direct Mode Buffer Overflow

The Options menu contains sizes of all buffers, if make smallest code is in effect extra buffer memory will not be available for direct mode.

Can't Create in Direct Mode

Variables cannot be created using direct mode, only ones defined by your code are available.

Select ... End Select Errors

Select without End Select

Select is a block directive and an End Select must conclude the block.

End Select without Select

Select..End Select is a block directive and both must be present.

Default without Select

The Default command is only relevant to the Select..End Select block directive.

Previous Case Block too Large

A Case section in a Select block is larger than 32K.

Case Without Select

The Case command is only relevant to the Select..End Select block directive.

Blitz Mode / Amiga Mode Errors

Only Available in Blitz mode

The command is only available in Blitz mode, refer to the reference section for Blitz/Amiga valid commands.

Only Available in Amiga mode

The command is only available in Amiga mode, refer to the reference section for Blitz/Amiga valid commands.

Strange Beast Errors

Optimizer Error! - \$'

This should never happen. Please report.

Expression too Complex

Should never happen. Contact Mark directly.

Not Supported

Should never happen.

Illegal Token

Should never happen.

Amiga Library Routines

BLITZLIBS:AMIGALIBS currently supports the EXEC, DOS, GRAPHICS, INTUITION and DISKFONT amiga libraries.

Parameter details for each command are given in brackets and are also available via the Blitz 2 keyboard help system.

Each call may be treated as either a command or a function.

Functions will always return a long either containing true or false (signifying if the command was successful or failed) or a value relevant to the routine.

The relative offsets from the library base and 68000 register parameters are included for the convenience of the assembler programmer.

When using library calls an underscore character (_) should follow the token name.

An asterisk (*) preceding routine names specifies that the calls are private and should not be called from Blitz 2.

EXEC

-30 Supervisor(userFunction)(a5)

---- special patchable hooks to internal exec activity ---

- 36 *execPrivate1()
- 42 *execPrivate2()
- 48 *execPrivate3()
- 54 *execPrivate4()
- 60 *execPrivate5()
- 66 *execPrivate6()

--- module creation ---

- 72 InitCode(startClass,version)(d0/d1)
- 78 InitStruct(initTable,memory,size)(a1/a2,d0)
- 84 MakeLibrary(funcInit,structInit,libInit,dataSize,segList)(a0/a1/a2,d0/d1)
- 90 MakeFunctions(target,functionArray,funcDispBase)(a0/a1/a2)
- 96 FindResident(name)(a1)
- 102 InitResident(resident,segList)(a1,d1)

--- diagnostics ---

- 108 Alert(alertNum)(d7)
- 114 Debug(flags)(d0)

--- interrupts ---

- 120 Disable()
- 126 Enable()
- 132 Forbid()
- 138 Permit()
- 144 SetSR(newSR,mask)(d0/d1)
- 150 SuperState()
- 156 UserState(sysStack)(d0)
- 162 SetIntVector(intNumber,interrupt)(d0/a1)
- 168 AddIntServer(intNumber,interrupt)(d0/a1)
- 174 RemIntServer(intNumber,interrupt)(d0/a1)
- 180 Cause(interrupt)(a1)

--- memory allocation ---

- 186 Allocate(freeList,byteSize)(a0,d0)
- 192 Deallocate(freeList,memoryBlock,byteSize)(a0/a1,d0)
- 198 AllocMem(byteSize,requirements)(d0/d1)
- 204 AllocAbs(byteSize,location)(d0/a1)
- 210 FreeMem(memoryBlock,byteSize)(a1,d0)
- 216 AvailMem(requirements)(d1)
- 222 AllocEntry(entry)(a0)
- 228 FreeEntry(entry)(a0)

--- lists ---

- 234 Insert(list,node,pred)(a0/a1/a2)
- 240 AddHead(list,node)(a0/a1)
- 246 AddTail(list,node)(a0/a1)
- 252 Remove(node)(a1)
- 258 RemHead(list)(a0)
- 264 RemTail(list)(a0)
- 270 Enqueue(list,node)(a0/a1)
- 276 FindName(list,name)(a0/a1)

--- tasks ---

- 282 AddTask(task,initPC,finalPC)(a1/a2/a3)
- 288 RemTask(task)(a1)
- 294 FindTask(name)(a1)
- 300 SetTaskPri(task,priority)(a1,d0)
- 306 SetSignal(newSignals,signalSet)(d0/d1)
- 312 SetExcept(newSignals,signalSet)(d0/d1)
- 318 Wait(signalSet)(d0)
- 324 Signal(task,signalSet)(a1,d0)
- 330 AllocSignal(signalNum)(d0)
- 336 FreeSignal(signalNum)(d0)
- 342 AllocTrap(trapNum)(d0)
- 348 FreeTrap(trapNum)(d0)

--- messages ---

- 354 AddPort(port)(a1)
- 360 RemPort(port)(a1)
- 366 PutMsg(port,message)(a0/a1)
- 372 GetMsg(port)(a0)
- 378 ReplyMsg(message)(a1)
- 384 WaitPort(port)(a0)
- 390 FindPort(name)(a1)

--- libraries ---

- 396 AddLibrary(library)(a1)
- 402 RemLibrary(library)(a1)
- 408 OldOpenLibrary(libName)(a1)
- 414 CloseLibrary(library)(a1)
- 420 SetFunction(library,funcOffset,newFunction)(a1,a0,d0)
- 426 SumLibrary(library)(a1)

--- devices ---

- 432 AddDevice(device)(a1)
- 438 RemDevice(device)(a1)
- 444 OpenDevice(devName,unit,ioRequest,flags)(a0,d0/a1,d1)
- 450 CloseDevice(ioRequest)(a1)
- 456 Dolo(ioRequest)(a1)
- 462 SendIO(ioRequest)(a1)
- 468 CheckIO(ioRequest)(a1)
- 474 WaitIO(ioRequest)(a1)
- 480 AbortIO(ioRequest)(a1)

--- resources ---

- 486 AddResource(resource)(a1)
- 492 RemResource(resource)(a1)
- 498 OpenResource(resName)(a1)

--- private diagnostic support ---

- 504 *execPrivate7()()
- 510 *execPrivate8()()
- 516 *execPrivate9()()

--- misc ---

- 522 RawDoFmt(formatString,dataStream,putChProc,putChData)(a0/a1/a2/a3)
- 528 GetCC()()
- 534 TypeOfMem(address)(a1)
- 540 Procure(semaport,bidMsg)(a0/a1)
- 546 Vacate(semaport)(a0)
- 552 OpenLibrary(libName,version)(a1,d0)

*** functions in Release 1.2 or higher ***

--- signal semaphores (note funny registers found in 1.2 or higher)---

- 558 InitSemaphore(sigSem)(a0)
- 564 ObtainSemaphore(sigSem)(a0)
- 570 ReleaseSemaphore(sigSem)(a0)
- 576 AttemptSemaphore(sigSem)(a0)
- 582 ObtainSemaphoreList(sigSem)(a0)
- 588 ReleaseSemaphoreList(sigSem)(a0)
- 594 FindSemaphore(sigSem)(a1)
- 600 AddSemaphore(sigSem)(a1)
- 606 RemSemaphore(sigSem)(a1)

--- kickmem support ---

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

-612 SumKickData()()

--- more memory support ---

-618 AddMemList(size,attributes,pri,base,name)(d0/d1/d2/a0/a1)

-624 CopyMem(source,dest,size)(a0/a1,d0)

-630 CopyMemQuick(source,dest,size)(a0/a1,d0)

*** functions in Release 2.0 or higher ***

--- cache ---

-636 CacheClearU()()

-642 CacheClearE(address,length,caches)(a0,d0/d1)

-648 CacheControl(cacheBits,cacheMask)(d0/d1)

--- misc ---

-654 CreateIORRequest(port,size)(a0,d0)

-660 DeleteIORRequest(iorequest)(a0)

-666 CreateMsgPort()()

-672 DeleteMsgPort(port)(a0)

-678 ObtainSemaphoreShared(sigSem)(a0)

--- even more memory support ---

-684 AllocVec(byteSize,requirements)(d0/d1)

-690 FreeVec(memoryBlock)(a1)

-696 CreatePrivatePool(requirements,puddleSize,puddleThresh)(d0/d1/d2)

-702 DeletePrivatePool(poolHeader)(a0)

-708 AllocPooled(memSize,poolHeader)(d0/a0)

-714 FreePooled(memory,poolHeader)(a1,a0)

--- misc ---

-720 AttemptSemaphoreShared(sigSem)(a0)

-726 ColdReboot()()

-732 StackSwap(newStack)(a0)

--- task trees ---

-738 ChildFree(tid)(d0)

-744 ChildOrphan(tid)(d0)

-750 ChildStatus(tid)(d0)

-756 ChildWait(tid)(d0)

--- future expansion ---

-762 CachePreDMA(address,length,flags)(a0/a1,d1)

-768 CachePostDMA(address,length,flags)(a0/a1,d1)

-774 *execPrivate10()()

-780 *execPrivate11()()

-786 *execPrivate12()()

-792 *execPrivate13()()

DOS

-30 Open(name,accessMode)(d1/d2)
 -36 Close(file)(d1)
 -42 Read(file,buffer,length)(d1/d2/d3)
 -48 Write(file,buffer,length)(d1/d2/d3)
 -54 Input()()
 -60 Output()()
 -66 Seek(file,position,offset)(d1/d2/d3)
 -72 DeleteFile(name)(d1)
 -78 Rename(oldName,newName)(d1/d2)
 -84 Lock(name,type)(d1/d2)
 -90 UnLock(lock)(d1)
 -96 DupLock(lock)(d1)
 -102 Examine(lock,fileInfoBlock)(d1/d2)
 -108 ExNext(lock,fileInfoBlock)(d1/d2)
 -114 Info(lock,parameterBlock)(d1/d2)
 -120 CreateDir(name)(d1)
 -126 CurrentDir(lock)(d1)
 -132 IoErr()()
 -138 CreateProc(name,pri,segList,stackSize)(d1/d2/d3/d4)
 -144 Exit(returnCode)(d1)
 -150 LoadSeg(name)(d1)
 -156 UnLoadSeg(seglist)(d1)
 -162 *dosPrivate1()()
 -168 *dosPrivate2()()
 -174 DeviceProc(name)(d1)
 -180 SetComment(name,comment)(d1/d2)
 -186 SetProtection(name,protect)(d1/d2)
 -192 DateStamp(date)(d1)
 -198 Delay(timeout)(d1)
 -204 WaitForChar(file,timeout)(d1/d2)
 -210 ParentDir(lock)(d1)
 -216 IsInteractive(file)(d1)
 -222 Execute(string,file,file2)(d1/d2/d3)

*** functions in Release 2.0 or higher ***

---DOS Object creation/deletion---

-228 AllocDosObject(type,tags)(d1/d2)
 -234 FreeDosObject(type,ptr)(d1/d2)

---Packet Level routines---

-240 DoPkt(port,action,arg1,arg2,arg3,arg4,arg5)(d1/d2/d3/d4/d5/d6/d7)
 -246 SendPkt(dp,port,replyport)(d1/d2/d3)
 -252 WaitPkt()()
 -258 ReplyPkt(dp,res1,res2)(d1/d2/d3)
 -264 AbortPkt(port,pkt)(d1/d2)

---Record Locking---

-270 LockRecord(fh,offset,length,mode,timeout)(d1/d2/d3/d4/d5)
 -276 LockRecords(recArray,timeout)(d1/d2)
 -282 UnLockRecord(fh,offset,length)(d1/d2/d3)
 -288 UnLockRecords(recArray)(d1)

ELIZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

---Buffered File I/O---

- 294 SelectInput(fh)(d1)
- 300 SelectOutput(fh)(d1)
- 306 FGetC(fh)(d1)
- 312 FPutC(fh,ch)(d1/d2)
- 318 UnGetC(fh,character)(d1/d2)
- 324 FRead(fh,block,blocklen,number)(d1/d2/d3/d4)
- 330 FWrite(fh,block,blocklen,number)(d1/d2/d3/d4)
- 336 FGets(fh,buf,buflen)(d1/d2/d3)
- 342 FPutS(fh,str)(d1/d2)
- 348 VFWritef(fh,format,argarray)(d1/d2/d3)
- 354 VPrintf(fh,format,argarray)(d1/d2/d3)
- 360 Flush(fh)(d1)
- 366 SetVBuf(fh,buff,type,size)(d1/d2/d3/d4)

---DOS Object Management---

- 372 DupLockFromFH(fh)(d1)
- 378 OpenFromLock(lock)(d1)
- 384 ParentOfFH(fh)(d1)
- 390 ExamineFH(fh,fib)(d1/d2)
- 396 SetFileDate(name,date)(d1/d2)
- 402 NameFromLock(lock,buffer,len)(d1/d2/d3)
- 408 NameFromFH(fh,buffer,len)(d1/d2/d3)
- 414 SplitName(name,separator,buf,oldpos,size)(d1/d2/d3/d4/d5)
- 420 SameLock(lock1,lock2)(d1/d2)
- 426 SetMode(fh,mode)(d1/d2)
- 432 ExAll(lock,buffer,size,data,control)(d1/d2/d3/d4/d5)
- 438 ReadLink(port,lock,path,buffer,size)(d1/d2/d3/d4/d5)
- 444 MakeLink(name,dest,soft)(d1/d2/d3)
- 450 ChangeMode(type,fh,newmode)(d1/d2/d3)
- 456 SetFileSize(fh,pos,mode)(d1/d2/d3)

---Error Handling---

- 462 SetIoErr(result)(d1)
- 468 Fault(code,header,buffer,len)(d1/d2/d3/d4)
- 474 PrintFault(code,header)(d1/d2)
- 480 ErrorReport(code,type,arg1,device)(d1/d2/d3/d4)
- 486 RESERVED

---Process Management---

- 492 Cli()()
- 498 CreateNewProc(tags)(d1)
- 504 RunCommand(seg,stack,paramptr,paramlen)(d1/d2/d3/d4)
- 510 GetConsoleTask()()
- 516 SetConsoleTask(task)(d1)
- 522 GetFileSysTask()()
- 528 SetFileSysTask(task)(d1)
- 534 GetArgStr()()
- 540 SetArgStr(string)(d1)
- 546 FindCliProc(num)(d1)
- 552 MaxCli()()
- 558 SetCurrentDirName(name)(d1)
- 564 GetCurrentDirName(buf,len)(d1/d2)
- 570 SetProgramName(name)(d1)
- 576 GetProgramName(buf,len)(d1/d2)

-582 SetPrompt(name)(d1)
-588 GetPrompt(buf,len)(d1/d2)
-594 SetProgramDir(lock)(d1)
-600 GetProgramDir()()

---Device List Management---

-606 SystemTagList(command,tags)(d1/d2)
-612 AssignLock(name,lock)(d1/d2)
-618 AssignLate(name,path)(d1/d2)
-624 AssignPath(name,path)(d1/d2)
-630 AssignAdd(name,lock)(d1/d2)
-636 RemAssignList(name,lock)(d1/d2)
-642 GetDeviceProc(name,dp)(d1/d2)
-648 FreeDeviceProc(dp)(d1)
-654 LockDosList(flags)(d1)
-660 UnLockDosList(flags)(d1)
-666 AttemptLockDosList(flags)(d1)
-672 RemDosEntry(dlist)(d1)
-678 AddDosEntry(dlist)(d1)
-684 FindDosEntry(dlist,name,flags)(d1/d2/d3)
-690 NextDosEntry(dlist,flags)(d1/d2)
-696 MakeDosEntry(name,type)(d1/d2)
-702 FreeDosEntry(dlist)(d1)
-708 IsFileSystem(name)(d1)

---Handler Interface---

-714 Format(filesystem,volumename,dostype)(d1/d2/d3)
-720 Relabel(drive,newname)(d1/d2)
-726 Inhibit(name,onoff)(d1/d2)
-732 AddBuffers(name,number)(d1/d2)

---Date, Time Routines---

-738 CompareDates(date1,date2)(d1/d2)
-744 DateToStr(datetime)(d1)
-750 StrToDate(datetime)(d1)

---Image Management---

-756 InternalLoadSeg(fh,table,funcarray,stack)(d0/a0/a1/a2)
-762 InternalUnLoadSeg(seglist,freefunc)(d1/a1)
-768 NewLoadSeg(file,tags)(d1/d2)
-774 AddSegment(name,seg,system)(d1/d2/d3)
-780 FindSegment(name,seg,system)(d1/d2/d3)
-786 RemSegment(seg)(d1)

---Command Support----

-792 CheckSignal(mask)(d1)
-798 ReadArgs(template,array,args)(d1/d2/d3)
-804 FindArg(keyword,template)(d1/d2)
-810 ReadItem(name,maxchars,cSource)(d1/d2/d3)
-816 StrToInt(string,value)(d1/d2)
-822 MatchFirst(pat,anchor)(d1/d2)
-828 MatchNext(anchor)(d1)
-834 MatchEnd(anchor)(d1)
-840 ParsePattern(pat,buf,buflen)(d1/d2/d3)

-846 MatchPattern(pat,str)(d1/d2)
-852 * Not currently implemented.
-858 FreeArgs(args)(d1)
-864 *--- (1 function slot reserved here) ---
-870 FilePart(path)(d1)
-876 PathPart(path)(d1)
-882 AddPart(dirname,filename,size)(d1/d2/d3)

---Notification---

-888 StartNotify(notify)(d1)
-894 EndNotify(notify)(d1)

---Environment Variable functions---

-900 SetVar(name,buffer,size,flags)(d1/d2/d3/d4)
-906 GetVar(name,buffer,size,flags)(d1/d2/d3/d4)
-912 DeleteVar(name,flags)(d1/d2)
-918 FindVar(name,type)(d1/d2)
-924 *dosPrivate4()()
-930 CliInitNewcli(dp)(a0)
-936 CliInitRun(dp)(a0)
-942 WriteChars(buf,buflen)(d1/d2)
-948 PutStr(str)(d1)
-954 VPrintf(format,argarray)(d1/d2)
-960 *--- (1 function slot reserved here) ---
-966 ParsePatternNoCase(pat,buf,buflen)(d1/d2/d3)
-972 MatchPatternNoCase(pat,str)(d1/d2)
-978 dosPrivate5()()
-984 SameDevice(lock1,lock2)(d1/d2)

GRAPHICS

-30 BltBitMap
(srcBitMap,xSrc,ySrc,destBitMap,xDest,yDest,xSize,ySize,minterm,mask,tempA)
(a0,d0/d1/a1,d2/d3/d4/d5/d6/d7/a2)

-36 BltTemplate(source,xSrc,srcMod,destRP,xDest,yDest,xSize,ySize)(a0,d0/d1/a1,d2/d3/d4/d5)

--- Text routines ---

-42 ClearEOL(rp)(a1)
-48 ClearScreen(rp)(a1)
-54 TextLength(rp,string,count)(a1,a0,d0)
-60 Text(rp,string,count)(a1,a0,d0)
-66SetFont(rp,textFont)(a1,a0)
-72 OpenFont(textAttr)(a0)
-78 CloseFont(textFont)(a1)
-84 AskSoftStyle(rp)(a1)
-90 SetSoftStyle(rp,style,enable)(a1,d0/d1)

--- Gels routines ---

-96 AddBob(bob,rp)(a0/a1)
-102 AddVSprite(vSprite,rp)(a0/a1)
-108 DoCollision(rp)(a1)
-114 DrawGLList(rp,vp)(a1,a0)

- 120 InitGels(head,tail,gelsInfo)(a0/a1/a2)
- 126 InitMasks(vSprite)(a0)
- 132 RemBob(bob,lp,vp)(a0/a1/a2)
- 138 RemVSprite(vSprite)(a0)
- 144 SetCollision(num,routine,gelsInfo)(d0/a0/a1)
- 150 SortGLList(lp)(a1)
- 156 AddAnimOb(anOb,anKey,lp)(a0/a1/a2)
- 162 Animate(anKey,lp)(a0/a1)
- 168 GetGBuffers(anOb,lp,flag)(a0/a1,d0)
- 174 InitGMasks(anOb)(a0)

--- General graphics routines ---

- 180 DrawEllipse(rp,xCenter,yCenter,a,b)(a1,d0/d1/d2/d3)
- 186 AreaEllipse(rp,xCenter,yCenter,a,b)(a1,d0/d1/d2/d3)
- 192 LoadRGB4(vp,colors,count)(a0/a1,d0)
- 198 InitRastPort(lp)(a1)
- 204 InitVPort(vp)(a0)
- 210 MrgCop(view)(a1)
- 216 MakeVPort(view,lp)(a0/a1)
- 222 LoadView(view)(a1)
- 228 WaitBlit()
- 234 SetRast(lp,pen)(a1,d0)
- 240 Move(lp,x,y)(a1,d0/d1)
- 246 Draw(lp,x,y)(a1,d0/d1)
- 252 AreaMove(lp,x,y)(a1,d0/d1)
- 258 AreaDraw(lp,x,y)(a1,d0/d1)
- 264 AreaEnd(lp)(a1)
- 270 WaitTOF()
- 276 QBlit(blit)(a1)
- 282 InitArea(arealInfo,vectorBuffer,maxVectors)(a0/a1,d0)
- 288 SetRGB4(vp,index,red,green,blue)(a0,d0/d1/d2/d3)
- 294 QBSBlit(blit)(a1)
- 300 BitClear(memBlock,byteCount,flags)(a1,d0/d1)
- 306 RectFill(lp,xMin,yMin,xMax,yMax)(a1,d0/d1/d2/d3)
- 312 BltPattern(lp,mask,xMin,yMin,xMax,yMax,maskBPR)(a1,a0,d0/d1/d2/d3/d4)
- 318 ReadPixel(lp,x,y)(a1,d0/d1)
- 324 WritePixel(lp,x,y)(a1,d0/d1)
- 330 Flood(lp,mode,x,y)(a1,d2,d0/d1)
- 336 PolyDraw(lp,count,polyTable)(a1,d0/a0)
- 342 SetAPen(lp,pen)(a1,d0)
- 348 SetBPen(lp,pen)(a1,d0)
- 354 SetDrMd(lp,drawMode)(a1,d0)
- 360 InitView(view)(a1)
- 366 CBump(copList)(a1)
- 372 CMove(copList,destination,data)(a1,d0/d1)
- 378 CWait(copList,v,h)(a1,d0/d1)
- 384 VBeamPos()
- 390 InitBitMap(bitMap,depth,width,height)(a0,d0/d1/d2)
- 396 ScrollRaster(lp,dx,dy,xMin,yMin,xMax,yMax)(a1,d0/d1/d2/d3/d4/d5)
- 402 WaitBOVP(vp)(a0)
- 408 GetSprite(sprite,num)(a0,d0)
- 414 FreeSprite(num)(d0)
- 420 ChangeSprite(vp,sprite,newData)(a0/a1/a2)
- 426 MoveSprite(vp,sprite,x,y)(a0/a1,d0/d1)
- 432 LockLayerRom(layer)(a5)
- 438 UnlockLayerRom(layer)(a5)
- 444 SyncSBitMap(layer)(a0)
- 450 CopySBitMap(layer)(a0)

-456 OwnBlitter()
-462 DisownBlitter()
-468 InitTmpRas(tmpRas,buffer,size)(a0/a1,d0)
-474 AskFont(rp,textAttr)(a1,a0)
-480 AddFont(textFont)(a1)
-486 RemFont(textFont)(a1)
-492 AllocRaster(width,height)(d0/d1)
-498 FreeRaster(p,width,height)(a0,d0/d1)
-504 AndRectRegion(region,rectangle)(a0/a1)
-510 OrRectRegion(region,rectangle)(a0/a1)
-516 NewRegion()
-522 ClearRectRegion(region,rectangle)(a0/a1)
-528 ClearRegion(region)(a0)
-534 DisposeRegion(region)(a0)
-540 FreeVPortCopLists(vp)(a0)
-546 FreeCopList(copList)(a0)
-552 ClipBlit(srcRP,xSrc,ySrc,destRP,xDest,yDest,xSize,ySize,minterm)(a0,d0/d1/a1,d2/d3/d4/d5/d6)
-558 XorRectRegion(region,rectangle)(a0/a1)
-564 FreeCprList(cprList)(a0)
-570 GetColorMap(entries)(d0)
-576 FreeColorMap(colorMap)(a0)
-582 GetRGB4(colorMap,entry)(a0,d0)
-588 ScrollVPort(vp)(a0)
-594 UCopperListInit(uCopList,n)(a0,d0)
-600 FreeGBuffers(anOb,rp,flag)(a0/a1,d0)
-606 BltBitMapRastPort(srcBM,x,y,destRP,x,y,Wid,Height,minterm)(a0,d0/d1/a1,d2/d3/d4/d5/d6)
-612 OrRegionRegion(srcRegion,destRegion)(a0/a1)
-618 XorRegionRegion(srcRegion,destRegion)(a0/a1)
-624 AndRegionRegion(srcRegion,destRegion)(a0/a1)
-630 SetRGB4CM(colorMap,index,red,green,blue)(a0,d0/d1/d2/d3)
-636 BltMaskBitMapRastPort
 (srcBM,x,y,destRP,x,y,Wid,High,mterm,Mask)(a0,d0/d1/a1,d2/d3/d4/d5/d6/a2)
-642 RESERVED
-648 RESERVED
-654 AttemptLockLayerRom(layer)(a5)

*** functions in Release 2.0 or higher ***

-660 GfxNew(gfxNodeType)(d0)
-666 GfxFree(gfxNodePtr)(a0)
-672 GfxAssociate(associateNode,gfxNodePtr)(a0/a1)
-678 BitMapScale(bitScaleArgs)(a0)
-684 ScalerDiv(factor,numerator,denominator)(d0/d1/d2)
-690 TextFit
(rp,string,strLen,textExtent,constrainingExtent,strDirection,constrainingBitWidth,constrainingBitHeight)(
a1,a0,d0/a2)

INTUITION

-30 OpenIntuition()
-36 Intuition(iEvent)(a0)
-42 AddGadget(window,gadget,position)(a0/a1,d0)
-48 ClearDMRequest(window)(a0)
-54 ClearMenuStrip(window)(a0)
-60 ClearPointer(window)(a0)
-66 CloseScreen(screen)(a0)

-72 CloseWindow(window)(a0)
 -78 CloseWorkBench()()
 -84 CurrentTime(seconds,micros)(a0/a1)
 -90 DisplayAlert(alertNumber,string,height)(d0/a0,d1)
 -96 DisplayBeep(screen)(a0)
 -102 DoubleClick(sSeconds,sMicros,cSeconds,cMicros)(d0/d1/d2/d3)
 -108 DrawBorder(rp,border,leftOffset,topOffset)(a0/a1,d0/d1)
 -114 DrawImage(rp,image,leftOffset,topOffset)(a0/a1,d0/d1)
 -120 EndRequest(requester,window)(a0/a1)
 -126 GetDefPrefs(preferences,size)(a0,d0)
 -132 GetPrefs(preferences,size)(a0,d0)
 -138 InitRequester(requester)(a0)
 -144 ItemAddress(menuStrip,menuNumber)(a0,d0)
 -150 ModifyIDCMP(window,flags)(a0,d0)
 -156 ModifyProp
 (gadget>window,requester,flags,horizPot,vertPot,horizBody,vertBody)(a0/a1/a2,d0/d1/d2/d3/d4)
 -162 MoveScreen(screen,dx,dy)(a0,d0/d1)
 -168 MoveWindow(window,dx,dy)(a0,d0/d1)
 -174 OffGadget(gadget>window,requester)(a0/a1/a2)
 -180 OffMenu(window,menuNumber)(a0,d0)
 -186 OnGadget(gadget>window,requester)(a0/a1/a2)
 -192 OnMenu(window,menuNumber)(a0,d0)
 -198 OpenScreen(newScreen)(a0)
 -204 OpenWindow(newWindow)(a0)
 -210 OpenWorkBench()()
 -216 PrintText(rp,iText,left,top)(a0/a1,d0/d1)
 -222 RefreshGadgets(gadgets>window,requester)(a0/a1/a2)
 -228 RemoveGadget(window,gadget)(a0/a1)
 -234 ReportMouse(flag>window)(d0/a0)
 -240 Request(requester>window)(a0/a1)
 -246 ScreenToBack(screen)(a0)
 -252 ScreenToFront(screen)(a0)
 -258 SetDMRequest(window,requester)(a0/a1)
 -264 SetMenuStrip(window,menu)(a0/a1)
 -270 SetPointer(window,pointer,height,width,xOffset,yOffset)(a0/a1,d0/d1/d2/d3)
 -276 SetWindowTitle(window,windowTitle,screenTitle)(a0/a1/a2)
 -282 ShowTitle(screen,showIt)(a0,d0)
 -288 SizeWindow(window,dx,dy)(a0,d0/d1)
 -294 ViewAddress()()
 -300 ViewPortAddress(window)(a0)
 -306 WindowToBack(window)(a0)
 -312 WindowToFront(window)(a0)
 -318 WindowLimits(window,widthMin,heightMin,widthMax,heightMax)(a0,d0/d1/d2/d3)
 -324 SetPrefs(preferences,size,inform)(a0,d0/d1)

 -330 IntuiTextLength(iText)(a0)
 -336 WBenchToBack()()
 -342 WBenchToFront()()
 -348 AutoRequest(window,body,posText,negText,pFlag,nFlag,width,height)(a0/a1/a2/a3,d0/d1/d2/d3)
 -354 BeginRefresh(window)(a0)
 -360 BuildSysRequest(window,body,posText,negText,flags,width,height)(a0/a1/a2/a3,d0/d1/d2)
 -366 EndRefresh(window,complete)(a0,d0)
 -372 FreeSysRequest(window)(a0)
 -378 MakeScreen(screen)(a0)
 -384 RemakeDisplay()()
 -390 RethinkDisplay()()
 -396 AllocRemember(rememberKey,size,flags)(a0,d0/d1)
 -402 AlohaWorkbench(wbport)(a0)
 -408 FreeRemember(rememberKey,reallyForget)(a0,d0)

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

-414 LockIBase(dontknow)(d0)
-420 UnlockIBase(ibLock)(a0)

*** functions in Release 1.2 or higher ***

-426 GetScreenData(buffer,size,type,screen)(a0,d0/d1/a1)
-432 RefreshGList(gadgets,window,requester,numGad)(a0/a1/a2,d0)
-438 AddGList(window,gadget,position,numGad,requester)(a0/a1,d0/d1/a2)
-444 RemoveGList(remPtr,gadget,numGad)(a0/a1,d0)
-450 ActivateWindow(window)(a0)
-456 RefreshWindowFrame(window)(a0)
-462 ActivateGadget(gadgets,window,requester)(a0/a1/a2)
-468 NewModifyProp
(gadget,window,requester,flags,horizPot,vertPot,horizBody,vertBody,numGad)
(a0/a1/a2,d0/d1/d2/d3/d4/d5)

*** functions in Release 2.0 or higher ***

-474 QueryOverscan(displayID,rect,oScanType)(a0/a1,d0)
-480 MoveWindowInFrontOf(window,behindWindow)(a0/a1)
-486 ChangeWindowBox(window,left,top,width,height)(a0,d0/d1/d2/d3)
-492 SetEditHook(hook)(a0)
-498 SetMouseQueue(window,queueLength)(a0,d0)
-504 ZipWindow(window)(a0)

--- public screens ---

-510 LockPubScreen(name)(a0)
-516 UnlockPubScreen(name,screen)(a0/a1)
-522 LockPubScreenList()()
-528 UnlockPubScreenList()()
-534 NextPubScreen(screen,namebuf)(a0/a1)
-540 SetDefaultPubScreen(name)(a0)
-546 SetPubScreenModes(modes)(d0)
-552 PubScreenStatus(screen,statusFlags)(a0,d0)
-558 ObtainGIRPort(gInfo)(a0)
-564 ReleaseGIRPort(rp)(a0)
-570 GadgetMouse(gadget,gInfo,mousePoint)(a0/a1/a2)
-576 *intuitionPrivate1()()
-582 GetDefaultPubScreen(nameBuffer)(a0)
-588 EasyRequestArgs(window,easyStruct,idcmpPtr,args)(a0/a1/a2/a3)
-594 BuildEasyRequestArgs(window,easyStruct,idcmp,args)(a0/a1,d0/a3)
-600 SysReqHandler(window,idcmpPtr,waitInput)(a0/a1,d0)
-606 OpenWindowTagList(newWindow,tagList)(a0/a1)
-612 OpenScreenTagList(newScreen,tagList)(a0/a1)

---new Image functions---

-618 DrawImageState(rp,image,leftOffset,topOffset,state,drawInfo)(a0/a1,d0/d1/d2/a2)
-624 PointInImage(point,image)(d0/a0)
-630 EraseImage(rp,image,leftOffset,topOffset)(a0/a1,d0/d1)
-636 NewObjectA(classPtr,classID,tagList)(a0/a1/a2)
-642 DisposeObject(object)(a0)
-648 SetAttrsA(object,tagList)(a0/a1)
-654 GetAttr(attrID,object,storagePtr)(d0/a0/a1)

---special set attribute call for gadgets---

-660 SetGadgetAttrsA(gadget,window,requester,tagList)(a0/a1/a2/a3)

-666 NextObject(objectPtrPtr)(a0)
-672 *intuitionPrivate2()()
-678 MakeClass(classID,superClassID,superClassPtr,instanceSize,flags)(a0/a1/a2,d0/d1)
-684 AddClass(classPtr)(a0)
-690 GetScreenDrawInfo(screen)(a0)
-696 FreeScreenDrawInfo(screen,drawInfo)(a0/a1)
-702 ResetMenuStrip(window,menu)(a0/a1)
-708 RemoveClass(classPtr)(a0)
-714 FreeClass(classPtr)(a0)
-720 *intuitionPrivate3()()
-726 *intuitionPrivate4()()

DISKFONT

-30 OpenDiskFont(textAttr)(a0)
-36 AvailFonts(buffer,bufBytes,flags)(a0,d0/d1)

*** functions in Release 1.2 or higher ***

-42 NewFontContents(fontsLock,fontName)(a0/a1)
-48 DisposeFontContents(fontContentsHeader)(a1)

*** functions in Release 2.0 or higher ***

-54 NewScaledDiskFont(sourceFont,destTextAttr)(a0/a1)

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

Amiga Hardware Registers

The following are a list of memory locations where direct access to the Agnus, Denise and Paula chips is possible. It is illegal to access any of these registers if you wish your program to behave correctly in the Amiga environment. However in BlitzMode most of these registers may be accessed taking into consideration the accompanying documentation.

An * next to any description states that the option is available only with the new ECS (Enhanced Chip Set).

Also note that any reference to memory pointers MUST point to chip mem as the Amiga Chip Set is NOT capable of accessing FAST mem. This includes BitPlane data, copper lists, Sprite Data, Sound DATA etc. etc.

BitPlane & Display Control

The Amiga has great flexibility in displaying graphics at different resolutions and positions on the monitor. The hardware registers associated with the display are nearly always loaded by the copper and not with the 68000 processor.

```
#BPLCON0=$100
#BPLCON1=$102
#BPLCON2=$104
#BPLCON3=$106 ; (ECS only)
```

BIT#	BPLCON0	BPLCON1	BPLCON2
15	HIRES (70ns pixels)		
14	BPU2 \		
13	BPU1 #BitPlanes(0-6)		
12	BPU0 /		
11	HOMOD Hold & Modify		
10	DBLPF DualPlayField		
09	COLOR Composite Enable		
08	GAUD GenlockAudio		
07			
06	*SHRES SuperHires	PF2H2 Playfield 2	PF2H3\
05	*BPLHWRM	PF2H1 horizontal	PF2PRI DBLPF Priority
04	*SPRHWRM	PF2H0/ scroll	PF2P2
03	LPEN LightPenEnable	PF1H3\	PF2P1 Priority to sprites
02	LACE Interlace	PF1H2 Playfield 1	PF2P0
01	ERSY ExternalSync	PF1H1 Horizontal	PF1P2
00		PF1H0/ scroll	PF1P1 Priority to sprites
			PF1P0

```
#BPL0PTH=$E0 ;BitPlane Pointer 0 High Word  
#BPL0PTL=$E2 ;BitPlane Pointer 0 Low Word  
#BPL1PTH=$E4  
#BPL1PTL=$E6  
#BPL2PTH=$E8  
#BPL2PTL=$EA  
#BPL3PTH=$EC  
#BPL3PTL=$EE  
#BPL4PTH=$F0  
#BPL4PTL=$F2  
#BPL5PTH=$F4  
#BPL5PTL=$F6
```

Each pair of registers contain an 18 bit pointer to the address of BitPlanex data in chip memory. They MUST be reset every frame usually by the copper.

```
#BPL1MOD=$108 ;Bitplane Modulo for Odd Planes  
#BPL2MOD=$10A ;Bitplane Modulo for EvenPlanes
```

At the end of each display line, the BPLxMODs are added to the the BitPLane Pointers so they point to the address of the next line.

```
#DIWSTOP=$090 ; display window stop  
#DIWSTRT=$08E ; display window start
```

These two registers control the display window size and position. The following bits are assigned

BIT#	15	14	13	12	11	10	09	08	07	06	05	04	03	02	01	00
	V7	V6	V5	V4	V3	V2	V1	V0	H7	H6	H5	H4	H3	H2	H1	H0

For DIWSTRT V8=0 & H8=0 restricting it to the upper left of the screen. For DIWSTOP V8=1 & H8=1 restricting it to the lower right of the screen.

```
#DDFSTOP= $094 ; data fetch stop  
#DDFSTRT=$092 ; data fetch start
```

The two display data fetch registers control when and how many words are fetched from the bitplane for each line of display.

Typical values are as follows:

lores 320 pixels, DDFSTRT & DDFSTOP = \$38 & \$D0
hires 640 pixels, DDFSTRT & DDFSTOP = \$3C & \$d4

If smooth scrolling is enabled DDFSTRT should be 2 less than above.

```
#BPL1DAT $110 ; BitPlane Data parallel to serial converters  
#BPL2DAT $112  
#BPL3DAT $114  
#BPL4DAT $116  
#BPL5DAT $118  
#BPL6DAT $11A
```

These 6 registers receive the DMA data fetched by the BitPlane engine, and output it serially to the Amiga DACS, triggered by writing to BPL1DAT. Not intended for programmer access.

The Copper

The Copper is found on the Agnus chip, its main job is to 'poke' values into the hardware registers in sync with the video beam. The main registers it updates are BitPlane ptrs, Sprites and other control words that HAVE to be reset every frame. It's also used to split the screen vertically as it is capable of waiting for certain video beam positions before writing data. Its also capable of waiting for the blitter to finish as well as skipping instructions if beam position is equal to certain values.

```
#COP1LCH=$080
#COP1LCL=$082
```

```
#COP2LCH=$084
#COP2LCL=$086
```

Each pair of registers contain an 18 bit pointer to the address of a Copper List in chip mem. The Copper will automatically jump to the address in COP1 at the beginning of the frame and is able to jump to COP2 if the following strobe is written to.

```
#COPJMP1=$88
#COPJMP2=$8A
```

When written to these addresses cause the copper to jump to the locations held in COP1LC & COP2LC. The Copper can write to these registers itself causing its own indirect jump.

```
#COPCON=$2E
```

By setting bit 1 of this register the copper is allowed to access the blitter hardware.

The copper fetches two words for each instruction from its current copper list. The three instructions it can perform and their relevant bits are as follows:

Bit#	MOVE		WAIT UNTIL		SKIP IF	
15	x	RD15	VP7	BFD	VP7	BFD
14	x	RD14	VP6	VE6	VP6	VE6
13	x	RD13	VP5	VE5	VP5	VE5
12	x	RD12	VP4	VE4	VP4	VE4
11	x	RD11	VP3	VE3	VP3	VE3
10	x	RD10	VP2	VE2	VP2	VE2
09	x	RD09	VP1	VE1	VP1	VE1
08	DA8	RD08	VP0	VE0	VP0	VE0
07	DA7	RD07	HP8	HE8	HP8	HE8
06	DA6	RD06	HP7	HE7	HP7	HE7
05	DA5	RD05	HP6	HE6	HP6	HE6
04	DA4	RD04	HP5	HE5	HP5	HE5
03	DA3	RD03	HP4	HE4	HP4	HE4
02	DA2	RD02	HP3	HE3	HP3	HE3
01	DA1	RD01	HP2	HE2	HP2	HE2
00	0	RD00	1	0	1	1

The MOVE instruction shifts the value held in RD15-0 to the destination address calculated by \$DFF000 +DA8-1.

The WAIT UNTIL instruction places the copper in a wait state until the video beam position is past HP,VP (xy coordinates). The Copper first logical ANDS (masks) the video beam with HE,VE before doing the comparison. If BFD is set then the blitter must also be finished before the copper will exit its wait state.

The SKIP IF instruction is similar to the WAIT UNTIL instruction but instead of placing the copper in a wait state if the video beam position fails the comparison test it skips the next MOVE instruction.

A detailed discussion of creating copper lists is included in the Blitz 2 user guide.

Colour Registers

The following 32 color registers can each represent one of 4096 colors.

```
#COLOR00=$180 #COLOR08=$190 #COLOR16=$1A0 #COLOR24=$1B0  
#COLOR01=$182 #COLOR09=$192 #COLOR17=$1A2 #COLOR25=$1B2  
#COLOR02=$184 #COLOR10=$194 #COLOR18=$1A4 #COLOR26=$1B4  
#COLOR03=$186 #COLOR11=$196 #COLOR19=$1A6 #COLOR27=$1B6  
#COLOR04=$188 #COLOR12=$198 #COLOR20=$1A8 #COLOR28=$1B8  
#COLOR05=$18A #COLOR13=$19A #COLOR21=$1AA #COLOR29=$1BA  
#COLOR06=$18C #COLOR14=$19C #COLOR22=$1AC #COLOR30=$1BC  
#COLOR07=$18E #COLOR15=$19E #COLOR23=$1AE #COLOR31=$1BE
```

The bit usage for each of the 32 colors is:

BIT#	15	14	13	12	11	10	09	08	07	06	05	04	03	02	01	00
	x	x	x	x	R3	R2	R1	R0	G3	G2	G1	G0	B3	B2	B1	B0

This represents a combination of 16 shades of red, green and blue.

Blitter Control

The Blitter is located on the Agnus, it's main function is to move blocks of data around chip mem. It has 3 input channels A,B & C and 1 output channel D. A simple block move would use 1 input channel and the 1 output channel, taking 4 clock ticks per cycle. A complex move such as a moving a shape to a destination with a cookie cut would use all 3 input channels and the output channel taking 8 clock ticks per cycle.

The main parameters of the blitter include the width and height of the block to be moved (width is in multiples of words), a start address for each channel, a modulo for each channel that is added to there address at the end of each line so they point to the next line, a logic function that specifies which input channels data will be sent to the destination channel.

Logic Function Calculation.

The following is a table to work out the logic function (known as the minterm) for a blitter operation.

A	B	C	D
0	0	0	LF0
0	0	1	LF1
0	1	0	LF2
0	1	1	LF3
1	0	0	LF4
1	0	1	LF5
1	1	0	LF6
1	1	1	LF7

If the Blitter is set up so that channel A points to the cookie, B points to the shape to be copied and C&D point to the destination bitplane (such as how Blitz 2 uses the blitter) we would specify the following conditions:

When A is 1 then make D=B

When A is 0 then make D=C

Using the above table we calculate the values of LF0-LF7 when these two conditions are met. The top line has A=0 so LF0 becomes the value in the C column which is a 0. A is 0 in the first 4 rows so LF0-LF3 all reflect the bits in the C column (0101) and A=1 in the lower 4 rows so LF4-LF7 reflect the bits in the B column (0011).

This generates a minterm LF0-LF7 of %10101100 or in hex \$AC.

Note: read the values of LF7 to LF0 from bottom to top to calculate the correct hexadecimal minterm.

```
#BLTAPTH=$50
#BLTAPTL=$52
```

```
#BLTBPTH=$4C
#BLTBPTL=$4E
```

```
#BLTCPTH=$48
#BLTCPTL=$4A
```

```
#BLTDPTH=$54
#BLTDPTL=$56
```

Each pair of registers contain an 18 bit pointer to the start address of the 4 blitter channels in chip mem.

```
#BLTAMOD=$64
#BLTBMOD=$62
#BLTCMOD=$60
#BLTDMOD=$66
```

The 4 modulo values are added to the blitter pointers at the end of each line.

```
#BLTADAT=$74
#BLTBDAT=$72
#BLTCDAT= $70
```

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

If a blitter channel is disabled the BLTxDAT register can be loaded with a constant value which will remain unchanged during the blit operation.

```
#BLTAFWM=$44 ; Blitter first word mask for source A
#BLTALWM=$46 ; Blitter last word mask for source A
```

During a Blitter operation these two registers are used to mask the contents of BLTADAT for the first and last word of every line.

```
#BLTCON0=$100
#BLTCON1=$102
```

The following bits in BLTCON0 & BLTCON1 are as follows.

BIT#	BLTCON0	BLTCON1
15	ASH3	BSH3
14	ASH2	BSH2
13	ASH1	BSH1
12	ASH0	BSH0
11	USEA	x
10	USEB	x
09	USEC	x
08	USED	x
07	LF7	x
06	LF6	x
05	LF5	x
04	LF4	EFE
03	LF3	IFE
02	LF2	FCI
01	LF1	DESC
00	LF0	0 (1=line mode)

ASH is the amount that source A is shifted (barrel rolled)

USEx enables each of the 4 blitter channels

LF holds the logic function as discussed previously in this section

BSH is the amount that source B is shifted (barrel rolled)

EFE is the Exclusive Fill Enable flag

IFE is the Inclusive Fill Enable flag

FCI is the Fill Carry Input

DESC is the descending flag (blitter uses decreasing addressing)

```
#BLTSIZE=$58
```

By writing the height and width of the blit operation to BLTSIZE the the blitter will start the operation. Maximum size is 1024 high and 64 words (1024 bits) wide. The following defines bits in BLTSIZE

BIT#	15 14 13 12 11 10 09 08 07 06 05 04 03 02 01 00
	h9 h8 h7 h6 h5 h4 h3 h2 h1 h0 w5 w4 w3 w2 w1 w0

```
#BLTSIZV= $5C ;(ECS ONLY)
```

```
#BLTSIZH =$5C ;(ECS ONLY)
```

With the new ECS writing to BLTSIZV first and then BLTSIZH the blitter can operate on blocks as large

as 32K x 32K pixels in size.

The Blitter is also able to perform linedrawing and filled polygon functions. Details about using the blitter for these functions can be found on the examples disk included with Blitz 2.

Audio Control

The Amiga has 4 channels of 8 bit audio, each with their own memory access, period and volume control. The following are a list of the applicable hardware registers.

```
#AUD0LCH=$A0 ;pairs of 24 bit memory pointers to audio data in chip mem  
#AUD0LCL=$A2  
#AUD1LCH=$B0  
#AUD1LCL=$B2  
#AUD2LCH=$C0  
#AUD2LCL=$C2  
#AUD3LCH=$D0  
#AUD3LCL=$D2  
  
#AUDOLEN=$A4 ;volume registers (0-63)  
#AUD1LEN=$B4  
#AUD2LEN=$C4  
#AUD3LEN=$D4  
  
#AUDOPER=$A6 ;period  
#AUD1PER=$B6  
#AUD2PER=$C6  
#AUD3PER=$D6  
  
#AUD0VOL=$A8  
#AUD1VOL=$B8  
#AUD2VOL=$C8  
#AUD3VOL=$D8  
  
#AUDODAT=$AA  
#AUD1DAT=$BA  
#AUD2DAT=$CA  
#AUD3DAT=$DA
```

Sprite Control

The Amiga hardware is capable of displaying eight 4 colour sprites or four 16 colour sprites. Standard control of sprites is done by using the copper to setup the 8 sprite pointers at the beginning of each frame.

```
#SPROPTH=$120 ;pairs of 24 bit memory pointers to sprite data in chip mem  
#SPROPTL=$122  
#SPR1PTH=$124  
#SPR1PTL=$126  
#SPR2PTH=$128  
#SPR2PTL=$12A  
#SPR3PTH=$12C
```

```
#SPR3PTL=$12E
#SPR4PTH=$130
#SPR4PTL=$132
#SPR5PTH=$134
#SPR5PTL=$136
#SPR6PTH=$138
#SPR6PTL=$13A
#SPR7PTH=$13C
#SPR7PTL=$13E
```

The pointers should point to data that begins with two words containing the SPRPOS & SPRCTL values for that sprite, followed by its image data and with two null words that terminate the data.

```
#SPR0POS = $140 #SPR0CTL = $142 #SPR0DATA = $144 #SPR0DATB = $146
#SPR1POS = $148 #SPR1CTL = $14A #SPR1DATA = $14C #SPR1DATB = $14E
#SPR2POS = $150 #SPR2CTL = $152 #SPR2DATA = $154 #SPR2DATB = $156
#SPR3POS = $158 #SPR3CTL = $15A #SPR3DATA = $15C #SPR3DATB = $15E
#SPR4POS = $160 #SPR4CTL = $162 #SPR4DATA = $164 #SPR4DATB = $166
#SPR5POS = $168 #SPR5CTL = $16A #SPR5DATA = $16C #SPR5DATB = $16E
#SPR6POS = $170 #SPR6CTL = $172 #SPR6DATA = $174 #SPR6DATB = $176
#SPR7POS = $178 #SPR7CTL = $17A #SPR7DATA = $17C #SPR7DATB = $17E
```

Using standard sprite DMA the above registers are all loaded from the sprite data pointed to in chip mem by the sprite pointers. These registers are only of interest to people wanting to 'multiplex' sprites by using the copper to load these registers rather than sprite DMA.

The following is bit definitions of both SPRPOS and SPRCTL.

BIT#	15	14	13	12	11	10	09	08	07	06	05	04	03	02	01	00
SPRPOS	SV7	SV6	SV5	SV4	SV3	SV2	SV1	SV0	SH8	SH7	SH6	SH5	SH4	SH3	SH2	SH1
SPRCTL	EV7	EV6	EV5	EV4	EV3	EV2	EV1	EV0	ATT	X	X	X	X	SV8	EV8	SH0

SV is the vertical start position of the sprite

SH is the horizontal position of the sprite (calculated in lores pixels only)

EV is the end vertical position

ATT is the sprite attached bit (connects odd sprites to their predecessors)

Interrupt Control

```
#INTENA=$9A ;interrupt enable write address
#INTENAR=$1C ;interrupt enable read address

#INTREQ=$9C ;interrupt request write address
#INTREQR=$9C ;interrupt request read address
```

INTENA is used to enable or disable interrupts. If the value written to INTENA has bit 15 set any other of the bits enable their corresponding interrupts. If bit 15 is clear any of the other bits set will disable their corresponding interrupts.

INTENAR will return which interrupts are currently enabled.

INTREQ is used to initiate or clear an interrupt. It is mostly used to clear the interrupt by the interrupt handler. Again Bit# 15 states whether the corresponding interrupts will be requested or cleared.

INTREQR returns which interrupts are currently requested.

The following bit definitions relate to the 4 interrupt control registers.

BIT#	NAME	LEVEL	DESCRIPTION
15	SET/CLR		determines if bits written with 1 are set or cleared
14	INTEN		master interrupt enable
13	EXTER	6	external interrupt
12	DSKSYN	5	disk sync register (same as DSKSYNC)
11	RBF	5	serial port Receive Buffer Full
10	AUD3	4	audio channel 3 finished
09	AUD2	4	audio channel 2 finished
08	AUD1	4	audio channel 1 finished
07	AUD0	4	audio channel 0 finished
06	BLIT	3	blitter finished
05	VERTB	3	start of vertical blank interrupt
04	COPER	3	copper
03	PORTS	2	I/O ports and timers
02	SOFT	1	reserved for software initiated interrupts
01	DSKBLK	1	disk block finished
00	TBE	1	serial port Transmit Buffer Empty

The following locations hold the address of the 68000 interrupt handler code in memory for each level of interrupt.

LEVEL	68000 Address
6	\$78
5	\$74
4	\$70
3	\$6c
2	\$68
1	\$64

DMA Control

DMA stands for direct memory access. Chip mem can be accessed by the display, blitter, copper, audio, sprites and diskdrive without using the 68000 processor. DMACON enables the user to lock out any of these from having direct memory access (DMA) to chipmem.

As with INTENA bit 15 of DMACON signals whether the write operation should clear or set the relevant bits of the DMA control.

DMACONR will not only return which channels have DMA access but has flags BBUSY which return true if the blitter is in operation and BZERO which return if the Blitter has generated any 1's from its logic function (useful for collision detection etc.)

#DMACON=\$96 ;DMA control write (clear or set)
#DMACONR=\$02 ;DMA control read (and blitter status) read

The following are the bits assigned to the two DMACON registers.

BIT#	NAME	DESCRIPTION
15	SET/CLR	determines if bits written with 1 are set or cleared
14	BBUSY	blitter busy flag
13	BZERO	blitter logic zero
12	X	
11	X	
10	BLTPRI	"blitter nasty" signals blitter has DMA priority over CPU
09	DMAEN	enable all DMA below
08	BPLEN	BitPlane DMA enable
07	COPEN	Copper DMA enable
06	BLTEN	Blitter DMA enable
05	SPREN	Sprite DMA enable
04	DSKEN	Disk DMA enable
03	AUD3EN	Audio channel 3 DMA enable
02	AUD2EN	Audio channel 2 DMA enable
01	AUD1EN	Audio channel 1 DMA enable
00	AUD0EN	Audio channel 0 DMA enable

Miscellaneous Amiga Chip Locations

The following is a list of the other \$dff000 addresses not covered by the previous sections. Because of their complex nature other texts should be referred to for more information.

#ADKCON=\$09E	;Audio/Disk control write
#ADKCONR=\$010	;Audio/Disk control read
#BEAMCON0=\$1DC	;ECS Beam Counter Control Register
#CLXCON=\$098	;Collision control register (see Blitz)(collision commands)
#CLXDAT=\$00E	;Collision data register (see Blitz)(collision commands)
#DENISEID=\$07C	;ECS Denise chip revision level
#DIWHIGH=\$1E4	;ECS display window high
#DSKBYTER=\$01A	;disk data byte and status read
#DISKDAT=\$026	;disk DMA data write
#DISKDATR=\$008	;disk DMA data read
#DSKLEN=\$024	;disk length
#DSKPTH=\$020	;disk pointer high
#DSKPTL=\$022	;disk pointer low
#DSKSYNC=\$07e	;disk sync register
#HBSTOP=\$1C6	;ECS horizontal line position for HBLANK stop
#HBSTRT=\$1C4	;ECS horizontal line position for HBLANK start
#HCENTER=\$1E2	;ECS horizontal position for Vsync on interlace
#HSSTOP=\$1C2	;ECS horizontal line position for HSYNC stop
#HSSTRT=\$1DE	;ECS horizontal line position for HSYNC strt
#HTOTAL=\$1C0	;ECS highest number count for horizontal line

#JOY0DAT=\$00A	:joystick mouse data left up/dwn
#JOY1DAT=\$00C	:joystick mouse data right up/dwn
#JOYTEST=\$036	:mouse counters write
#POT0DAT=\$012	:pot counter data left pair
#POT1DAT=\$014	:pot counter data right pair
#POTGO=\$034	:pot port data write and start
#POTGOR=\$016	:pot port data read
#REFPTR=\$028	:refresh pointer
#SERDAT=\$030	:serial port data write (with stop bit)
#SERDATR=\$018	:serial port data read and status bits
#SERPER=\$032	:baud rate and 9 bit word flag
#STREQU=\$038	:strobe for horizontal sync with VB and EQU
#STRHOR=\$03C	:strobe for horizontal sync
#STRLONG=\$03E	:ECS strobe for id of long horizontal line
#STRVBL=\$03A	:strobe for horizontal sync with VB
#VBSTOP=\$1CE	:ECS vertical line for vblank stop
#VBSTRT=\$1CC	:ECS vertical line for vblank start
#VHPOSR=\$006	:video beam position
#VHPOSW=\$02C	:write vertical beam position
#VPOSR=\$004	:video beam position (vertical most significant bit)
#VPOSW=\$02A	:write vertical beam position MSB
#VSSTOP=\$1CA	:ECS vertical line position for VSYNC stop
#VSSTRT=\$1E0	:ECS vertical line position for VSYNC start
#VTOTAL=\$1C8	:ECS highest numbered vertical line

Amiga CIAs

The Amiga has two 8520 Complex Interface Adapter (CIA) which handle most of the Amiga I/O activities. Note that each register should be accessed as a byte and NOT a word. The following is an address map of both Amiga CIAs.

Byte Address	Register	b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0
\$BFE001	pra	FIR1 FIR0 RDY TK0 WPR0 CHNG LED OVL
\$BFE101	prb	Parallel Port
\$BFE201	ddra	Direction for Port A (1=output)
\$BFE301	ddrb	Direction for Port B (1=output)
\$BFE401	talo	Timer A High Byte
\$BFE501	tahi	Timer A High Byte
\$BFE601	tblo	Timer B Low Byte
\$BFE701	tbhi	Timer B High Byte
\$BFE801	todlo	50/60 Hz Event Counter bits 7-0
\$BFE901	todmid	50/60 Hz Event Counter bits 15-8
\$BFEA01	todhi	50/60 Hz Event Counter bits 23-16
\$BFEB01		not used
\$BFEC01	sdr	Serial Data Register (connected to keyboard)
\$BFED01	icr	Interrupt Control Register
\$BFEE01	cra	Control Register A
\$BFEF01	crb	Control Register B

CIA B

Address	Register	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
\$BFD000	pra	DTR	RTS	CD	CTS	DSR	SEL	POUT	BUSY
\$BFD100	prb	MTR	SEL3	SEL2	SEL1	SEL0	SIDE	DIR	STEP
\$BFD200	ddra	Direction for Port A (1=output)							
\$BFD300	ddrb	Direction for Port B (1=output)							
\$BFD400	talo	Timer A High Byte							
\$BFD500	tahi	Timer A High Byte							
\$BFD600	tblo	Timer B Low Byte							
\$BFD700	tbhi	Timer B High Byte							
\$BFD800	todlo	Horizontal Sync Event Counter bits 7-0							
\$BFD900	todmid	Horizontal Sync Event Counter bits 15-8							
\$BFDA00	todhi	Horizontal Sync Event Counter bits 23-16							
\$BFDB00	not used								
\$BFDC00	sdr	Serial Data Register (connected to keyboard)							
\$BFDD00	icr	Interrupt Control Register							
\$BFDE00	cra	Control Register A							
\$BFDF00	crb	Control Register B							

68000 Assembly Language

Although Blitz 2 is a BASIC compiler, it also has an 'inline assembler' and can be used as a fully fledged assembler. Assembly language is the language of the microprocessor, in the case of the Amiga, the 68000 microprocessor.

The following is a brief description of the Motorola 68000 microprocessor and its instruction set, for more information we recommend the data books published by Motorola themselves as the best source of reference material.

Registers

The 68000 has 16 internal registers, these may be thought of as high speed variables each capable of storing a long word (32 bits). The 8 data registers are used mainly for calculations while the 8 address registers are mostly used for pointing to locations in memory.

The registers are named D0-D7 and A0-A7. The 68000 also has several specialised registers, the program counter (PC) and the status register (SR). The program counter points to the current instruction that the microprocessor is executing, while the status register is a bunch of flags with various meanings.

Addressing

The main job of the microprocessor is to read information from memory, perform a calculation and then write the result back to memory.

For the processor to access memory it has to generate a memory address for the location it wishes to access (read or write to). The following are the different ways the 68000 can generate addresses.

Register Direct

`MOVE d1,d0`

The actual value in the register d1 is copied into d0

Address Register Indirect

`MOVE (a0),d0`

a0 is a pointer to somewhere in memory. The value at this location is copied into the register d0.

ELIEZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

Address Register Indirect with Postincrement

MOVE (a0)+,d0

The value at the location pointed to by a0 is copied into the register d0, then a0 is incremented so it points to the next memory location.

Address Register Indirect with Predecrement

MOVE -(a0),d0

a0 is first decremented to point to the memory location before the one it currently points to then the value at the new memory location is copied into d0.

Address Register Indirect with Displacement

MOVE 16(a0),d0

The memory location located 16 bytes after that which is pointed to by address register a0 is copied to d0.

Address Register Indirect with Index

MOVE 16(a0,d1),d0

The memory location is calculated by adding the contents of a0 with d1 plus 16.

Absolute Address

MOVE \$dff096,d0

The memory location \$dff096 is used.

Program Counter with Displacement

MOVE label(pc),d0

This is the same as absolute addressing but because the memory address is an offset from the program counter (no bigger than 32000 bytes) it is MUCH quicker.

Program Counter with Index

MOVE label(pc,d1),d0

The address is calculated as the location of label plus the contents of data register d1.

Immediate Data

MOVE #20,d0

The value 20 is moved to the data register.

Program Flow

As mentioned previously the microprocessor has a special register known as the program counter that points to the next instruction to be executed. By changing the value in the program counter a 'goto' can be performed. The JMP instruction load the program counter with a new value, it supports most of the addressing modes.

A branch is a program counter relative form of the JMP instruction. Branches can also be performed on certain conditions such as BCC which will only cause the program flow to change if the Carry flag in the status register is currently set.

A 'gosub' can be performed using the JSR and BSR commands. The current value of the program counter is remembered on the stack before the jump or branch is performed. The RTS command is used to 'return' to the original program location.

The Stack

The Amiga sets aside a certain amount of memory for each task known as a stack. The address register A7 is used to point to the stack and should never be used as a general purpose address register.

The 68000 uses predecrement addressing to push data onto the stack and postincrement addressing to pull information off the stack.

JSR is the same as MOVE.I pc,-(a7) and then JMP

RTS is the same as MOVE.I (a7)+,pc

The stack can be used to temporarily store internal registers. To save and restore all the 68000 registers the following code is often used

```
ASubroutine:
    MOVEM.I d0-d7/a0-a6,-(a7)    ;push all register on stack
    ;main subroutine code here which can stuff up registers without worrying
    MOVEM.I (a7)+,d0-d7/a0-a6    ;pull registers off stack
    RTS                          ;return from subroutine
```

Condition Flags

The status register is a special 68000 register that holds, besides other things all the condition codes. The following are a list of the condition flags:

Code	Name	Meaning
N	negative	reflects the most significant bit of the result of the last operation.
Z	zero	is set if the result is zero, cleared otherwise.
C	carry	is set when an add, subtract or compare operation generate a carry
X	extend	is a mirror of the carry flag, however its not affected by data movement.
V	overflow	is set when an arithmetic operation causes an overflow, a situation where the operand is not large enough to represent the result.

Conditional Tests

Branches and Sets can be performed conditionally. The following is a list of the possible conditions that can be tested before a branch or set is performed.

cc	condition	coding	test
T	true	0000	1
F	false	0001	0
HI	high	0010	not C & not Z
LS	lowsam	0011	C I Z
CC	carry clr	0100	not C
CS	carry set	0101	C
NE	ot equal	0110	not Z
EQ	equal	0111	Z
VC	overflow clr	1000	not V
VS	overflow set	1001	V
PL	plus	1010	not N
MI	minus	1011	N
GE	greater equal	1100	N&V I notN¬V
LT	less than	1101	N¬V I notN&V
GT	greater than	1110	N&V¬Z I notN¬V¬C
LE	less or equal	1111	Z I N¬V I notN&V

Operand Sizes

The 68000 can perform operations on bytes, words and long words. By adding a suffix .b .w or .l to the opcode, the assembler knows which data size you wish to use, if no suffix is present the word size is default. There is no speed increase using bytes instead of words as the 68000 is a 16 bit microprocessor and so no overhead is needed for 16 bit operations. However 32 bit long words do cause overhead with extra read and write cycles needed to perform operations on a bus that can only handle 16 bits at a time.

The 68000 Instruction Set

The following is a brief description of the 68000 instruction set.

Included with each are the addressing mode combinations available with each opcode. Their syntax are as follows:

Dn data register
 An address register
 Dy,Dx data registers source & destination
 Rx,Ry register source & destination (data & address registers)
 <ea> effective address - a subset of addressing modes
 #<data> numeric constant

Special notes:

The address register operands ADDA, CMPA, MOVEA and SUBA are only word and long word data sizes. The last 'A' of the operand name is optional as it is with the immediate operands ADDI, CMPI, MOVEI, SUBI, ORI, EORI and ANDI.

The ADDQ and SUBQ are quick forms of their immediate cousins. The immediate data range is 1 to 8.

The MOVEQ instruction has a data range of -128 to 127, the data is sign extended to 32 bits, and long is the only data size available.

The <ea> denotes an effective address, not all addressing modes are available with each effective address form of the instruction, as a rule program counter relative addressing is only available for the source operand and not the destination.

The Blitz2 compiler will signal any illegal forms of the instruction during the compile stage.

ABCD Add with extend using Binary Coded Decimal **ASR** Arithmetic Shift Right

ABCD Dy,Dx	ASR Dx,Dy
ABCD -(Ay),-(Ax)	ASR #<data>,Dy
	ASR <ea>

Data Size: byte

Data Size: byte word & long

ADD Add binary

ADD <ea>,Dn	Bcd <label>
ADD Dn,<ea>	
ADDA <ea>,An	Data Size: byte & word
ADDI #<data>,<ea>	
ADDQ #<data>,<ea>	

Data Size: byte, word & long

Bcc Branch Conditionally

BCHG Test a Bit & Change

BCHG Dn,<ea>	
BCHG #<data>,<ea>	

ADDX Add with Extend

Data Size: byte & long

ADDX Dy,Dx	
ADDX -(Ay),-(Ax)	

Data Size: byte word & long

BCLR Test a Bit & Clear

BCLR Dn,<ea>	
BCLR #<data>,<ea>	

AND AND logical

Data Size: byte & long

AND <ea>,Dn	
AND Dn,<ea>	
ANDI #<data>,<ea>	

Data Size: byte word & long

BRA Branch Always

Data Size: byte & word

ASL Arithmetic Shift Left

BSET Test a Bit & Set

ASL Dx,Dy	
ASL #<data>,Dy	
ASL <ea>	

Data Size: byte word & long

BSET Dn,<ea>	
BSET #<data>,<ea>	

Data Size: byte & long

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

BTST Test a Bit

BTST Dn,<ea>
BTST #<data>,<ea>

Data Size: byte & long

CHK Check Register Against Bounds and TRAP

CHK <ea>,Dn

Data Size: word

CLR Clear an Operand

CLR <ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

CMP Compare

CMP <ea>,Dn
CMPA <ea>,An
CMPI #<data>,<ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

CMPM Compare Memory

CMPM (Ay)+,(Ax)+

Data Size: byte word & long

DBcc Test Condition, Decrement, and Branch

DBcc Dn,<label>

Data Size: word

DIVS Signed Divide

DIVS <ea>,Dn Data

Size: word

DIVU Unsigned Divide

DIVU <ea>,Dn

Data Size: word

EOR Exclusive OR Logical

EOR Dn,<ea>
EORI #<data>,<ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

EXG Exchange Registers

EXG Rx,Ry

Data Size: long

EXT Sign Extend

EXT Dn Data

Size: word & long

ILLEGAL Illegal Instruction

ILLEGAL

Data Size: none

JMP Jump

JMP <ea>

Data Size: long

JSR Jump to Subroutine

JSR <ea>

Data Size: long

LEA Load Effective Address

LEA <ea>,An

Data Size: long

LINK Link and Allocate

LINK An,#<displacement>

Data Size: word

LSL Logical Shift Left

LSL Dx,Dy
LSL #<data>,Dy
LSL <ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

LSR Logical Shift Right

LSR Dx,Dy
LSR #<data>,Dy
LSR <ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

MOVE Move Data from Source to Destination

MOVE <ea>,<ea>
MOVEA <ea>,An
MOVEQ #<data>,Dn

Data Size: byte word & long

MOVEM Move Multiple Registers

MOVEM <register list>,<ea>
MOVEM <ea>,<register list>

Data Size: word & long

MOVEP Move Peripheral

MOVEP Dx,d(Ay)
MOVEP d(Ay),Dx

Data Size: word & long

MULS Signed Multiple

MULS <ea>,Dn

Data Size: word

MULU Unsigned Multiple

MULU <ea>,Dn

Data Size: word

NBCD Negate Decimal with Extend

NBCD <ea>

Data Size: byte

NEG Negate

NEG <ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

NEGX Negate with Extend

NEGX <ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

NOP No Operation

NOP

Data Size: none

NOT Logical Complement

NOT <ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

OR Inclusive OR Logical

OR <ea>,Dn
OR Dn,<ea>
ORI #<data>,<ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

PEA Push Effective Address

PEA <ea>

Data Size: long

RESET Reset External Device

RESET

Data Size: none

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

ROL Rotate Left (without Extend)

ROL Dx,Dy
ROL #<data>,Dn
ROL <ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

ROR Rotate Right (without Extend)

ROR Dx,Dy
ROR #<data>,Dn
ROR <ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

ROXL Rotate Left with Extend

ROXL Dx,Dy
ROXL #<data>,Dn
ROXL <ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

ROXR Rotate Right with Extend

ROXR Dx,Dy
ROXR #<data>,Dn
ROXR <ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

RTE Return from Exception

RTE Data

Size: None

RTR Return and Restore Condition Codes

RTR

Data Size: None

RTS Return from Subroutine

RTS

Data Size: None

SBCD Subtract Decimal with Extend

SBCD Dy,Dx
SBCD -(Ay),-(Ax)

Data Size: byte

Scc Set according to Condition

Scc <ea>

Data Size: byte

STOP Load Status Register and Stop

STOP #xxx

Data Size: None

SUB Subtract Binary

SUB <ea>,Dn
SUB Dn,<ea>
SUBA <ea>,An
SUBI #<data>,<ea>
SUBQ #<data>,<ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

SUBX Subtract with Extend

SUBX Dy,Dx
SUBX -(Ay),-(Ax)

Data Size: byte word & long

SWAP Swap Register Halves

SWAP Dn

Data Size: long

TAS Test & Set an Operand

TAS <ea>

Data Size: byte

TRAP Trap

TRAP #<vector>

Data Size: None

TRAPV Trap an Overflow

TRAPV

Data Size: None

TST Test an Operand

TST <ea>

Data Size: byte word & long

UNLK Unlink

UNLK An Data

Size: None

ELIEZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

Raw Key Codes

The following is a diagram of all the keycodes for the Amiga 500 and 2000 keyboard. They are all in hexadecimal notation.

BLIZZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

COMMAND INDEX

Abs	5-2	CInt	1-15
AbsMouse	28-1	Cls	16-1
ACos	5-8	CNIF	8-4
Activate	25-22	Colour	23-8
ActivateString	26-6	ColSplit	19-7
AddFirst	2-7	Cont	1-5
AddIDCMP	25-5	CookieMode	21-3
AddItem	2-8	CopLen	19-10
AddLast	2-8	CopLoc	19-9
Addr	12-3	CopyBitMap	13-2
ALibJsr	9-3	CopyShape	14-4
AMIGA	8-2	Cos	5-6
Asc	6-3	CSIF	8-5
ASin	5-8	Cursor	25-17
ASyncFade	17-7	CursX	23-10
ATan	5-8	CursY	23-11
AutoCookie	14-4	CustomCop	19-8
BBlit	21-8	Cvi	6-5
BBlitMode	21-10	Cvl	6-6
Bin\$	6-2	Cvq	6-6
BitMap	13-1	Cycle	17-3
BitMapInput	23-11	Data	2-1
BitMapOutput	23-8	Dc	9-1
BLibJsr	9-3	Dcb	9-1
Blit	21-1	Default	1-9
BlitMode	21-2	DefaultIDCMP	25-4
BlitzRepeat	23-1	DefaultInput	4-5
BLITZ	8-1	DefaultOutput	4-5
BlitzKeys	23-1	DEFTYPE	2-4
Blue	17-5	Dim	2-6
BorderPens	26-13	DiskBuffer	18-6
Borders	26-12	DiskPlay	18-5
Box	16-3	DispHeight	5-1
Boxf	16-3	Display	19-10
Buffer	21-7	DoColl	22-3
Call	10-2	DoFade	17-8
Case	1-9	DosBuffLen	7-8
CaseSense	6-10	Ds	9-2
CatchDosErrs	7-9	Edit	4-7
CELSE	8-6	Edit\$	4-6
CEND	8-5	Editat	25-17
Centre\$	6-9	EditExit	25-19
CERR	8-6	EditFrom	25-18
Chr\$	6-2	Else	1-6
Circle	16-4	EMouseX	25-25
Circlef	16-5	EMouseY	25-26
ClearList	2-7	End	1-4
ClearString	26-7	End Function	3-3
ClickButton	28-3	End Macro	8-7
CloseEd	11-2	End Select	1-9
CloseFile	7-3	End SetErr	1-16
ClrErr	1-17	End SetInt	1-15

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

End Statement	3-1	ILBMDepth	15-1
EndIf	1-6	ILBMHeight	15-1
Eof	7-7	ILBMInfo	15-1
EraseMode	21-3	ILBMWidth	15-1
ErrFail	1-17	IncBin	8-3
Even	9-2	INCDIR	8-4
Event	25-7	INCLUDE	8-2
EventWindow	25-8	InFront	20-3
Exchange	2-3	InFrontB	20-5
Exp	5-9	InFrontF	20-4
FadeIn	17-6	InitSound	18-3
FadeStatus	17-8	Inkey\$	4-8
FadeOut	17-7	InnerCls	25-16
Fields	7-3	InnerHeight	25-30
FileInput	7-5	InnerWidth	25-29
FileOutput	7-5	Instr	6-3
FileSeek	7-6	Int	5-3
Filter	18-6	InvMode	21-4
FindScreen	24-2	ItemHit	25-10
FirstItem	2-11	ItemStackSize	2-14
FloatMode	4-3	Joyb	4-5
FloodFill	16-6	Joyer	4-4
FlushBuffer	21-9	Joyx	4-3
FlushEvents	25-8	Joyy	4-4
FlushQueue	21-7	KillFile	7-8
For	1-10	KillItem	2-9
Forever	1-12	LastItem	2-12
Format	4-2	LCase\$	6-9
Frac	5-3	Left\$	6-1
Free	12-1	Len	6-6
Free BitMap	13-2	Let	2-1
Free BlitzFont	23-7	Line	16-2
Free MacroKey	28-8	LoadBitMap	13-3
Free Palette	17-2	LoadBlitzFont	23-6
Free Window	25-3	LoadModule	18-7
FreeFill	16-6	LoadPalette	17-1
Free Module	18-7	LoadScreen	24-3
FreeSlices	19-5	LoadShape	14-1
Function	3-2	LoadShapes	14-2
Function Return	3-3	LoadSound	18-1
GadgetBorder	26-14	LoadSprites	20-6
GadgetHit	25-9	LoadTape	28-6
GadgetJam	26-3	Loc	7-8
GadgetPens	26-2	Locate	23-9
Get	7-5	Lof	7-7
GetaShape	14-3	Log	5-10
GetaSprite	20-2	Log10	5-10
GetReg	9-2	LoopSound	18-2
Gosub	1-1	LSet\$	6-8
Goto	1-1	Macro	8-6
Green	17-5	MacroKey	28-8
Handle	14-5	MakeCookie	14-4
HCos	5-8	Maximum	12-3
Hex\$	6-2	MaxLen	2-3
HPropBody	26-11	MButtons	25-11
HPropPot	26-11	MenuChecked	27-7
HSin	5-9	MenuColour	27-6
HTan	5-9	MenuGap	27-5
If	1-5	MenuHit	25-9

MenuItem	27-2	rastport	25-31
Menus	25-23	RawKey	25-12
MenuState	27-6	RawStatus	23-2
MenuTitle	27-1	Read	2-2
Mid\$	6-1	ReadFile	7-2
MidHandle	14-6	ReadMem	7-9
Mki\$	6-4	Record	28-4
Mkl\$	6-5	RectsHit	22-5
Mkq\$	6-5	Red	17-4
Mouse	23-3	Redraw	26-12
MouseArea	23-4	RelMouse	28-2
MouseButton	28-2	ReMap	16-6
MouseWait	1-3	Repeat	1-11
MouseX	23-4	Replace\$	6-4
MouseXSpeed	23-5	ResetList	2-6
MouseY	23-5	ResetString	26-7
MouseYSpeed	23-6	Return	1-2
NEWTYPE	2-4	Return	2-2
Next	1-10	RGB	17-4
NextItem	2-11	Right\$	6-1
NoCli	11-3	FileRequest\$	4-6
NPrint	4-1	Rnd	5-5
NTSC	5-1	Rotate	14-8
NumPars	11-1	RSet\$	6-8
On Goto Gosub	1-2	SaveBitmap	13-3
OpenFile	7-1	SaveScreen	24-3
PalRGB	17-2	SaveShape	14-2
Par\$	11-2	SaveShapes	14-3
PColl	22-3	SaveSprites	20-6
Peek	10-1	SaveTape	28-6
Peek	5-2	SBlit	21-11
Peeks	10-2	SBlitMode	21-12
PeekSound	18-5	Scale	14-7
PlayBack	28-4	SColl	22-4
PlayModule	18-7	Screen	24-1
PlayWait	28-5	ScreenPens	24-5
Plot	16-1	ScreensBitMap	13-2
Point	16-2	Scroll	16-5
Pointer	23-3	Select	1-8
Poke	10-1	SetColl	22-1
Pop	1-12	SetCollHi	22-2
PopItem	2-14	SetCollOdd	22-2
PrevItem	2-10	SetCycle	17-3
Print	4-1	SetErr	1-16
PropGadget	26-8	SetHProp	26-10
PushItem	2-13	SetInt	1-13
Put	7-4	SetMenu	27-5
PutReg	9-2	SetString	26-8
QAbs	5-3	SetVProp	26-10
QAMIGA	8-2	Sgn	5-5
QBlit	21-6	ShapeGadget	26-3
QBlitMode	21-7	ShapeHeight	14-5
QFrac	5-4	ShapeItem	27-3
QLimit	5-4	ShapesHit	22-4
Qualifier	25-13	ShapeSpriteHit	22-4
Queue	21-4	ShapeSub	27-4
QuickPlay	28-5	ShapeWidth	14-5
QuietTrap	28-7	Shared	3-4
QWrap	5-4	Show	19-5

BLITZ BASIC 2 REFERENCE MANUAL

ShowB	19-7	ViewPort	24-5
ShowBlitz	19-9	Volume	18-3
ShowF	19-6	VPropBody	26-12
ShowScreen	24-1	VPropPot	26-11
ShowSprite	20-3	VWait	1-17
ShowStencil	21-12	WaitEvent	25-6
Sin	5-6	WBox	25-14
SizeLimits	25-30	WBStartup	11-1
SizeOf	2-5	WbToScreen	24-2
Slice	19-3	WCircle	25-14
SMouseX	24-4	WCls	25-16
SMouseY	24-5	WColour	25-20
SolidMode	21-4	WCursX	25-26
Sort	2-14	WCursY	25-27
SortDown	2-15	WEllipse	25-15
SortUp	2-15	Wend	1-7
Sound	18-1	While	1-7
SoundData	18-4	Window	25-1
SpritesHit	22-5	WindowFont	25-20
Sqr	5-9	WindowHeight	25-29
Statement	3-1	WindowInput	25-3
Statement Return	3-2	WindowOutput	25-4
Stencil	21-10	WindowWidth	25-29
Stop	1-4	WindowX	25-28
StopCycle	17-4	WindowY	25-28
StopModule	18-8	WJam	25-21
Str\$	6-11	WLeftOff	25-30
String\$	6-3	Wline	25-15
StringGadget	26-4	WLocate	25-27
StringText\$	26-5	WMouseX	25-24
StripLead\$	6-7	WMouseY	25-25
StripTrail\$	6-8	WMove	25-23
SubHit	25-11	WPlot	25-13
SubIDCMP	25-6	WPointer	25-23
SubItem	27-4	WriteFile	7-3
SubItemOff	27-5	WriteMem	7-10
SysJsr	9-2	WScroll	25-17
Tan	5-7	WSize	25-24
TapeTrap	28-7	WTopOff	25-30
TextGadget	26-1	XFlip	14-6
Toggle	26-4	XINCLUDE	8-3
TokeJsr	9-3	XStatus	28-6
Type	28-3	YFlip	14-7
UCase\$	6-9		
UnBuffer	21-9		
UnLeft\$	6-7		
UnQueue	21-6		
UnRight\$	6-7		
Until	1-11		
Use	12-1		
Use BitMap	13-1		
Use BlitzFont	23-7		
Use Palette	17-1		
Use Slice	19-4		
Use Window	25-2		
Used	12-2		
USEPATH	8-1		
UStr\$	6-11		
Val	6-10		

